This supplement was sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and Primary Care Metabolic Group. It was edited and peer reviewed by *The Journal of Family Practice*.

PRIMARY CARE EDUCATION CONSORTIUM
WWW.PCECONSORTIUM.ORG

PCMG Primary Care Metabolic Group
WWW.PCMG-US.ORG

SUPPLEMENT TO
THE JOURNAL OF FAMILY PRACTICE®
VOL 69, NO 7 | SEPTEMBER 2020 | MDEDGE.COM/FAMILYMEDICINE

A SPECIAL SUPPLEMENT ON

HOT TOPICS in Primary Care

Faculty

George Bakris, MD
Professor of Medicine, Director, AHA Comprehensive Hypertension Center, The University of Chicago Medicine,
Chicago, IL

Eliot Brinton MD, FAHA, FNLA, FACE
Past President, American Board of Clinical Lipidology,
President, Utah Lipid Center
Salt Lake City, UT

Stephen Brunton, MD, FAAFP
Adjunct Associate Professor, Touro University California, College of Osteopathic Medicine, Vallejo, CA; Executive Vice President for Education, Primary Care Education Consortium,
Murrieta, CA

Robert Chilton, DO, FACC, FAHA, MACOI, FSCAI
Professor of Medicine, Associate Program Director Interventional Cardiology, Director Catheterization Lab UT/Clinical Proteomics, Division of Cardiology, University of Texas Health Science Center,
San Antonio, TX

Michael Cobble, MD, FNLA
Director, Canyon Medical Center, Adjunct Faculty, University of Utah,
Salt Lake City, UT

Robert F. Kushner, MD
Professor of Medicine and Medical Education, Northwestern University Feinberg School of Medicine, Division of Endocrinology,
Chicago, IL

Brian E. Lacy, MD, PhD, FACG
Co-Editor in Chief, American Journal of Gastroenterology, Professor of Medicine, Senior Associate Consultant, Mayo Clinic, Jacksonville, FL

Kevin R. Murphy, MD
Director, Clinical Research, Allergy, Asthma and Pediatric Pulmonology, Boys Town National Research Hospital, Boys Town, NE

Craig Primack, MD, FACP, FAAP, FOMA
Diplomate, American Board of Obesity Medicine, President, Obesity Medicine Association, Scottsdale Weight Loss Center,
Scottsdale, AZ

Martin Quan, MD
Professor of Clinical Family Medicine, Director, Office of Continuing Medical Education, David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA, Vice Chair for Academic Affairs, UCLA Department of Family Medicine,
Los Angeles, CA

Thomas Roth, PhD
Director, Sleep Disorders and Research Center, Henry Ford Health System,
Detroit, MI

Jay H. Shubrook, DO, FAAFP, FACOFP
Professor, Primary Care Department, Director of Clinical Research, Director of Diabetes Services, Touro University,
Vallejo, CA

Gary W. Small, MD
Professor, Psychiatry and Biobehavioral Sciences, Parlow-Solomon Professor on Aging, David Geffen School of Medicine; Director, Division of Geriatric Psychiatry, UCLA Semel Institute; Director, UCLA Longevity Center; University of California,
Los Angeles, CA

Joel Solis, MD
Valley Medical Arts Clinic, The University of Texas Rio Grande Valley,
McAllen, TX

Matthew R. Weir, MD
Director of the Division of Nephrology, Department of Medicine, University of Maryland School of Medicine,
Baltimore, MD

Steven M. Weisman, PhD
Innovative Science Solutions, Inc.,
Morristown, NJ

Barbara Yawn, MD, MSc, FAAFP
Adjunct Professor, Family and Community Health, University of Minnesota; Clinical and Research Consultant, COPD Foundation,
Miami, FL

Hot Topics in Primary Care: 2020

The educational needs of family physicians are diverse, reflective of the ages of the patients and the diseases that we manage. This year's issue of *Hot Topics in Primary Care* is similarly diverse, including diseases such as asthma and autosomal dominant kidney disease that are commonly observed early in life, as well as chronic obstructive pulmonary disease and dementia that typically occur late in life. These are 4 of the 14 articles in this special issue intended to provide updated information about common and not-so-common diseases encountered during the nearly 400 million patient visits with family physicians each year. The faculty have taken great care to focus on the issues thought to be of greatest importance to family physicians.

Your comments about the quality and relevance of the articles in this special issue are helpful as we plan next year's issue, so please provide us with your feedback.

Wishing you and your patients good health.

Stephen Brunton, MD, FAAFP
Executive Vice President
Primary Care Education Consortium

Addressing Nutritional Gaps: Simple Steps for the Primary Care Provider

Martin Quan, MD

CONTINUING MEDICAL EDUCATION

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Identify common shortfalls in the typical American diet.
- Address the link between poor diet quality and chronic disease.
- Identify patients at risk for vitamin deficiency and potential vitamin–drug interactions.
- Recognize patients with vitamin and mineral deficiencies.
- Partner with patients regarding selection and appropriate use of vitamin and mineral supplements to achieve recommended dietary allowances.

TARGET AUDIENCE

Family physicians and clinicians who wish to gain increased knowledge and greater competency regarding primary care management of diabetes mellitus and kidney disease.

DISCLOSURES

As a continuing medical education provider accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME), Primary Care Education Consortium (PCEC) requires any individual in a position to influence educational content to disclose any financial interest or other personal relationship with any commercial interest. This includes any entity producing, marketing, re-selling or distributing health care goods or services consumed by, or used on, patients. Mechanisms are in place to identify and resolve any potential conflict of interest prior to the start of the activity. In addition, any discussion of off-label, experimental, or investigational use of drugs or devices will be disclosed by the faculty.

Dr. Quan discloses he has no real or apparent conflicts of interests to report. Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, editorial support, discloses he has no real or apparent conflicts of interests to report. Additional PCEC staff report no conflicts of interest.

SPONSORSHIP

This activity is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium, in collaboration with the Primary Care Metabolic Group.

ACCREDITATION

The Primary Care Education Consortium is accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME) to provide continuing medical education for physicians.

CREDIT DESIGNATION

AMA PRA Category 1 – Primary Care Education Consortium designates this enduring material for a maximum of 1.0 AMA PRA Category 1 credit(s)™. Physicians should claim only the credit commensurate with the extent of their participation in the activity. CME is available September 1, 2020 to August 31, 2021.

METHOD OF PARTICIPATION

PHYSICIANS: To receive CME credit, please read the journal article and, on completion, go to www.pceconsortium.org/nutrition to complete the online post-test and receive your certificate of completion.

PHYSICIAN ASSISTANTS AND NURSE PRACTITIONERS: AANP, ANCC, and AAPA accept certificates of participation of educational activities certified for AMA PRA Category 1 Credit™ from organizations accredited by ACCME.

SUPPORTERS

This article supported by an educational grant from Pfizer Inc.

FACULTY

Martin Quan, MD, Professor of Clinical Family Medicine, Director, Office of Continuing Medical Education, David Geffen School of Medicine at UCLA, Vice Chair for Academic Affairs, UCLA Department of Family Medicine.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Editorial support was provided by Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, at the Primary Care Education Consortium (PCEC).

NUTRITIONAL STATUS IN THE UNITED STATES

Although nutrition experts often advise that individuals consuming the standard American diet with 3 square meals a day do not need vitamins or nutritional supplements, it appears the American public disagrees. In fact, in 2019 the Council for Responsible Nutrition reported in its Consumer Survey on Dietary Supplements that 79% of adult females and 74% of adult males used dietary supplements with usage rates highest among those age 35 to 54 (81%) and those age >55 (79%).[1] A multivitamin was found to be the most popular supplement (58%) followed by vitamin D (31%), vitamin C (28%), and protein (21%). The top reason for taking a dietary supplement was to improve overall health and wellness. Notably, supplement users were more likely to practice healthy lifestyle habits than non-users and less than one-quarter of supplements taken by adults were recommended by their physician or other health care provider.[1]

The failure of the American diet to ensure micronutri-

ent intake adequacy was evident in a secondary analysis of nationally representative data from the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey (NHANES).[2] Using data from the 2003–2004 and 2005–2006 data cycles, one-third of Americans were found to be at risk for 1 or more vitamin deficiency or anemia with significantly higher risk seen in non-Hispanic blacks (55%), individuals from low income households (42%), those without a high school diploma (42%), as well as underweight (42%) or obese individuals (39%). Consumption of an adequate diet based on estimated average requirements offered no guarantee of nutritional adequacy, with a 16% risk of 1 or more nutritional deficiency among those consuming an "adequate" diet compared with 57% in those with an inadequate diet.[2]

The adequacy of the American diet was further called into question by the 2012 US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention *Second National Report on Biochemical Indicators of Diet and Nutrition*.[3] Based on laboratory analysis of 58 biochemical indicators in specimens from a representative sample of the US population during a 4-year period from 2003 through 2006, the report stated that 10.5% of Americans had a vitamin B_6 deficiency (<20 nmol/L), 8.1% had a severe vitamin D deficiency (<30 nmol/L), 9.5% of women age 12 to 49 years had low body iron status (<0 mg/kg), and one-third of pregnant women were marginally iodine deficient.[3] The percentage of those who met recommended levels varied by age, sex, ethnicity, and/or geographic location.

Although *Dietary Guidelines for Americans 2015-2020* released by the US Department of Health and Human Services and the US Department of Agriculture noted that deficiencies of essential nutrients dramatically decreased over the past century, the report also noted that about one-half of all US adults have 1 or more preventable, diet-related chronic diseases.[4] Many of these, such as obesity and type 2 diabetes mellitus, were attributed to unhealthy eating patterns associated with low intakes of vegetables, fruits, whole grains, and dairy products, excess consumption of processed, calorie-dense foods, and lack of physical activity. The report identified potassium, dietary fiber, choline, magnesium, calcium, and vitamins A, D, E, and C as underconsumed nutrients and identified underconsumption of iron to be a particular concern in females age 19 to 50.

Although balanced consumption of unprocessed, nutrient-dense foods (eg, fruits, vegetables, legumes, whole grains, low-fat dairy, and lean meats) remains the preferred means of attaining recommended intakes of micronutrients, the dietary shortcomings of diets consumed by a large segment of the American public supports a role for vitamin and mineral supplementation. In the NHANES analysis,[2] users of multivitamin/mineral supplements (MVMS) were found to have the lowest risk of micronutrient deficiency (14%) compared with non-users (40%).[2] Similarly, based on data from NHANES 2007-2008 and 2009-2010, MVMS use contributed to a greater number of individuals meeting recommended intakes of almost all micronutrients measured.[5]

In addition to helping prevent micronutrient deficiency, dietary supplement use also could have a role in preventing micronutrient inadequacies, which could lead to development of chronic disease as hypothesized in the "triage theory".[6,7] According to this theory, when the availability of a micronutrient is inadequate, the body ensures that micronutrient-dependent functions required for short-term survival takes priority over more constitutive functions, the lack of which can have long-term consequences.[8] Current recommended daily vitamin intakes are based primarily on the dosage required to ensure that immediate clinical consequences associated with deficiency do not occur; for example, vitamin K to prevent bleeding, vitamin C to prevent scurvy, thiamine to prevent beriberi, and vitamin D to prevent rickets. Whether or not the current intake of micronutrients—which generally is less than the currently recommended intake—is sufficient to optimize their more subtle, long-term health effects has been questioned and remains an area of investigation. For example, although the adequacy of current vitamin K intake recommendations for coagulation function has been well established, it might not be high enough to optimize vitamin K-dependent constitutive functions important to maintain long-term health. Evidence forming the basis of the "triage theory" is presented in a perspective by McCann and Ames that supports the theory that vitamin K "inadequacy" might play a role in the development of age-related diseases such as osteoporosis, cardiovascular disease, and cancer.[8]

AT-RISK GROUPS

When taking a medical history, it is important to identify groups of patients at risk for nutritional deficiency, which can include those who are otherwise healthy, such as pregnant women,[9-11] children and adolescents,[12,13] and geriatric patients.[14,15] Individuals at particular risk for nutritional deficiency include those who are obese,[6,16-18] non-Hispanic black,[19,20] and low income or food insecure.[21,22] Other at-risk groups include individuals with inflammatory bowel disease, cancer, alcohol use disorder, HIV, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease,[23] diabetes,[24] substance use disorder, age-related macular degeneration or other vision impairment, a restricted or suboptimal eating pattern, a gastrointestinal malabsorption syndrome, those who have undergone bariatric surgery, or who have difficulty with manual dexterity such as arthritis.[2,25,26]

Drug-nutrient interactions can contribute to micronutrient deficiencies and should not be overlooked.[27] For example, metformin use has been linked to reduced intestinal absorption of vitamin B_{12} and the American Diabetes Association has recommended periodic measurement of vitamin B_{12} levels in metformin-treated patients.[28] Similarly, vitamin B_{12} deficiency has been reported with use of histamine-2 receptor antagonists.[29] Chronic proton pump inhibitor use has been linked with vitamin B_{12} deficiency and possibly with deficiencies of vitamin C, iron, calcium, and magnesium.[30,31]

Nutritional gaps are common among overweight and obese individuals and might stem from overconsumption of calorie-rich, micronutrient-poor, processed foods. Studies support these individuals being at increased risk for several micronutrient inadequacies/deficiencies, including vitamins A, C, D and E, as well as calcium and magnesium.[6] A history of bariatric surgery has been linked to deficiencies of thiamine, vitamin B_{12}, vitamin E, vitamin D, and copper.[32]

A patient's dentition can impact nutrition. In a small cross-sectional study of older adults, loss of posterior teeth on both sides was associated with less consumption of meat, nut, egg, fish, and dairy products resulting in less than adequate intake of protein, iron, and vitamin B_{12}.[33]

Whether a patient's diet includes animals or animal products also influences nutritional risk. In a Swiss study by Schupbach et al,[34] the intake and status of selected vitamins and nutrients was assessed among adults following vegetarian (n=53), vegan (n=53), or omnivore (n=100) diets for 1 or more year(s). Most participants in all 3 groups were iodine deficient. Other common deficiencies in all 3 groups included folic acid, vitamin B_6, vitamin B_2, niacin, iron, and zinc.

Finally, micronutrient deficiencies are common among patients who follow weight-loss diets, such as Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension (DASH), Atkins, Ornish, and Weight Watchers.[35-38] For example, high-fat, low-carbohydrate diets provide lower than recommended intakes of vitamin E, vitamin A, thiamine, vitamin B_6, folate, calcium, magnesium, iron, potassium, and dietary fiber. Very low-fat diets (eg, Ornish diet, Pritikin diet) generally are low in vitamin E, vitamin B_{12}, and zinc. Although moderate-fat, balanced nutrition diets (eg, Weight Watchers, Jenny Craig, NutriSystem) can be nutritionally sound provided appropriate and correct food choices are made, patients may be at risk for inadequate intake of several micronutrients. A recent study by Pascual et al found that subjects who lost an average of 29.7 kg over 3.4 years (body mass index 36.5 kg/m^2 at baseline) on Weight Watchers exhibited a healthier dietary pattern, including consumption of foods with higher micronutrient density, than a control group of weight-stable adults with obesity (body mass index 41.1 kg/m^2).[39] Nonetheless, one-quarter or more of the Weight Watchers group remained deficient in calcium, magnesium, zinc, vitamin A, vitamin B1, and folate, and nearly all were deficient in potassium, and vitamins D and E. Recent investigations have shown multiple deficiencies in the hypocaloric vegan Eat to Live-Vegan/Aggressive Weight Loss, high-animal protein low-carbohydrate Fast Metabolism, and weight-maintenance Eat, Drink and Be Healthy diets, particularly vitamin D, calcium, and vitamin B_{12}.[40]

VITAMIN AND MINERAL SUPPLEMENTATION

Micronutrients have distinct biologic functions essential to metabolic functioning, growth and development, and many cellular and organ system functions. It generally is agreed that achieving micronutrient intake levels on a population-wide and individual basis consistent with established reference values is a worthwhile public health goal.[4,41]

In 2018, a panel of 14 international experts in nutritional science and health was convened to clarify the role of multivitamin and mineral supplements in supporting human health.[42] Unsurprisingly, the panel's systematic review found that, on a population basis, the use of MVMS reduced the prevalence of inadequate intake of micronutrients. In addition, the panel concluded that using a daily MVMS with micronutrient amounts not exceeding tolerable upper intake levels was one way to provide the recommended levels of many micronutrients needed for maintaining health without posing a safety risk. However, the panel concluded there was insufficient evidence to indicate that MVMS are effective for primary prevention of chronic medical conditions including cardiovascular disease and cancer, and additional research was necessary to fully define the benefits of MVMS on health promotion and disease prevention.

PREVENTING CHRONIC DISEASE

The 2018 international panel also found insufficient evidence to support the long-term use of MVMS to lower the risk of some chronic diseases, such as cardiovascular disease and some types of cancer.[42] Moreover, the use of supra-dietary dosages of individual micronutrients has demonstrated potential for harm. For example, a meta-analysis by Miller et al reported a higher risk of all-cause mortality associated with dosages of vitamin E ≥400 mg/d.[43] In addition, a higher risk of lung cancer has been reported with beta-carotene supplementation, particularly in heavy smokers.[44]

Other investigators have found no benefit of micronutrient supplementation in reducing risk of chronic diseases. A systematic review and meta-analysis of 18 studies with

18.4 million person-years of follow-up found no association between MVMS use and cardiovascular disease or coronary heart disease mortality.[45] Similarly, a prospective cohort study of 30,899 US adults followed over a median of 6.1 years found dietary supplement use was not associated with a mortality benefit.[46]

In its 2013 systematic evidence review, the US Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF) found limited evidence supporting any benefit from MVMS for preventing cardiovascular disease or cancer and no evidence supporting a benefit or harm of multivitamin use on cardiovascular disease, cancer, or mortality in healthy individuals without known nutritional deficiencies.[47] For cancer, after pooling findings of 2 randomized controlled trials, the USPSTF noted a 7% reduction (unadjusted pooled relative risk, 0.93 [confidence interval, 0.87 to 0.99]) of all cancer incidence among men who took a multivitamin for ≥10 years but no protective benefit among women.

A lack of cognitive benefit has been reported with use of some over-the-counter supplements. A systematic review of 38 trials evaluated the efficacy of omega-3 fatty acids, soy, ginkgo biloba, B vitamins, vitamin D plus calcium, vitamin C, or β-carotene, and multi-ingredient supplements in preventing cognitive decline, mild cognitive impairment, and Alzheimer-type dementia.[48] The investigators found insufficient evidence to recommend use of any over-the-counter supplement for cognitive protection in adults with normal cognition or mild cognitive impairment.

Although useful for preventing and treating micronutrient deficiencies, it is unclear whether supplement use by itself offers direct health benefits comparable to nutrients sourced from foods. Chen et al[40] found that supplement use was not associated with mortality benefits among US adults in a recent prospective cohort study of more than 27,000 adults using NHANES data from 1999 to 2010 linked to National Death Index mortality data. Although the study found adequate intake of vitamin K, vitamin A, magnesium, zinc, and copper was associated with reduced all-cause or cardiovascular disease mortality, the associations were restricted to nutrient intake from foods rather than supplements. In addition, the study found evidence of an increased risk of cancer death associated with excess calcium intake in participants who took supplemental dosages of at least 1000 mg/d and no association between cancer risk and calcium intake from foods. The bottom line: Although supplement use contributes to an increased level of total nutrient intake, there appears to be beneficial associations with nutrients from foods that aren't seen with supplements. This underscores the importance of encouraging patients to achieve adequate nutrient intake from eating nutrient-dense, whole, fresh, unprocessed foods within the framework of a healthy, balanced diet rather than relying solely on nutritional supplements to make up for the deficits associated with a poor diet.

SUPPLEMENTS IN CLINICAL PRACTICE

Choosing a supplement

The US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) regulates dietary supplements, but unlike prescription and non-prescription medications, the FDA is not authorized to review dietary supplements for safety and effectiveness before they are sold.[49] Only after a dietary supplement enters the marketplace can the FDA take action against adulterated or misbranded dietary supplements.

Although supplement use contributes to an increased level of total nutrient intake, there appears to be beneficial associations with nutrients from foods that aren't seen with supplements. This underscores the importance of encouraging patients to achieve adequate nutrient intake from eating nutrient-dense, whole, fresh, unprocessed foods within the framework of a healthy, balanced diet rather than relying solely on nutritional supplements to make up for the deficits associated with a poor diet.

Under the terms of the Dietary Supplement Health and Education Act of 1994, manufacturers of dietary supplements are not required to receive FDA approval before marketing dietary supplements that were sold in the United States prior to 1994. However, they are required to submit a safety-focused new dietary ingredient notification for any ingredient not falling under this clause. Manufacturers are required to ensure that the product label is truthful and not misleading, but for most claims made in labeling dietary supplements, the manufacturer or seller is not required to prove to the FDA that the claim is accurate or truthful before it appears on the product label. It is illegal for a manufacturer to market a dietary supplement product as a treatment or cure for a specific disease or to alleviate symptoms of a disease. Advertising of dietary supplements is under the Federal Trade Commission's jurisdiction.

To assist and inform consumers, the National Institutes of Health has launched an online Dietary Supplement Label Database at https://dsld.od.nih.gov/dsld. This database lists

the ingredients of thousands of dietary supplements and includes information from the label on dosage, health claims, and cautions.

Because the FDA does not validate the quality of supplements, a number of third-party groups have taken on this role, including the nonprofits US Pharmacopeia (USP) and National Science Foundation International, as well as the for-profit ConsumerLab.com and UL (formerly Underwriters Laboratory). Among these, the standards for supplements established by USP are the most widely accepted. USP also sets mandatory standards for pharmaceuticals.

PROVIDING NUTRITIONAL CARE IN PRIMARY CARE

The foundation for providing effective nutritional care in the outpatient setting is grounded in good communication with the patient, including the use of online tools and resources as well as involving a multidisciplinary care team.[50] Because nutrition is heavily influenced by behaviors that occur outside the provider-patient encounter, it is paramount to identify and address behaviors, as well as patient values and concerns, that contribute to nutritional deficiencies.[51] This process is directed toward fostering and supporting patients' motivation and sense of control, thereby boosting patient empowerment.

Because a goal of dietary counseling is for patients to take greater responsibility for and a more active role in decision making referable to their health, structuring the patient encounter using the 5 As construct might be helpful. Applying this framework to dietary counseling calls for: 1) Assessing the patient's diet and associated comorbidities, 2) Advising on the nutritional soundness of their diet and the benefits of selected changes, 3) Assessing readiness for change, 4) Assisting the patient in deciding where to begin making changes and behaviors to focus on, and 5) Arranging for follow-up and/or referral to available resources, as appropriate.[50]

Shared decision making is a key component of patient counseling and engagement to ensure that medical care better aligns with a patient's preferences and values. This approach requires the provider to explore treatment options with the patient to clarify the patient's values and concerns. This might entail discussing various options such as eating a healthy diet, taking 1 or more vitamin and mineral supplement(s), or doing nothing. It is important to keep in mind that the patient must be willing and able to implement the agreed upon treatment and the provider's role is to coach and support the patient.

RESOURCE TOOLKIT

A list of resources that might be helpful in learning about micronutrient-related issues, including those for patient education, is at http://www.pcmg-us.org/nutrition. ●

REFERENCES

1. Council for Responsible Nutrition. Dietary suppement use reaches all time high. Published 2019. https://www.crnusa.org/newsroom/dietary-supplement-use-reaches-all-time-high-available-purchase-consumer-survey-reaffirms. Accessed February 19, 2020.
2. Bird JK, Murphy RA, Ciappio ED, McBurney MI. Risk of deficiency in multiple concurrent micronutrients in children and adults in the United States. *Nutrients.* 2017;9(7):655.
3. US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Second National Report on Biochemical Indicators of Diet and Nutrition in the U.S. Population. Published 2012. https://www.cdc.gov/nutritionreport/pdf/Nutrition_Book_complete508_final.pdf. Accessed July 31, 2019.
4. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services and U.S. Department of Agriculture. 2015-2020 Dietary Guidelines for Americans. 8th edition. Published 2015. https://health.gov/dietaryguidelines/2015/resources/2015-2020_Dietary_Guidelines.pdf. Accessed July 30, 2019.
5. Wallace TC, McBurney M, Fulgoni VL, 3rd. Multivitamin/mineral supplement contribution to micronutrient intakes in the United States, 2007-2010. *J Am Coll Nutr.* 2014;33(2):94-102.
6. Astrup A, Bugel S. Overfed but undernourished: recognizing nutritional inadequacies/deficiencies in patients with overweight or obesity. *Int J Obes (Lond).* 2019;43(2):219-232.
7. Ames BN. Low micronutrient intake may accelerate the degenerative diseases of aging through allocation of scarce micronutrients by triage. *Proc Natl Acad Sci U S A.* 2006;103(47):17589-17594.
8. McCann JC, Ames BN. Vitamin K, an example of triage theory: is micronutrient inadequacy linked to diseases of aging? *Am J Clin Nutr.* 2009;90(4):889-907.
9. Bailey RL, Pac SG, Fulgoni VL 3rd, Reidy KC, Catalano PM. Estimation of total usual dietary intakes of pregnant women in the United States. *JAMA Netw Open.* 2019;2(6):e195967.
10. Groth SW, Stewart PA, Ossip DJ, Block RC, Wixom N, Fernandez ID. Micronutrient intake is inadequate for a sample of pregnant African-American women. *J Acad Nutr Diet.* 2017;117(4):589-598.
11. Phelan S, Abrams B, Wing RR. Prenatal intervention with partial meal replacement improves micronutrient intake of pregnant women with obesity. *Nutrients.* 2019;11(5):1071.
12. Demmer E, Cifelli CJ, Houchins JA, Fulgoni VL 3rd. The pattern of complementary foods in American infants and children aged 0-5 years old-A cross-sectional analysis of data from the NHANES 2011-2014. *Nutrients.* 2018;10(7):827.
13. Dixon LB, Breck A, Kettel Khan L. Comparison of children's food and beverage intakes with national recommendations in New York City child-care centres. *Public Health Nutr.* 2016;19(13):2451-2457.
14. Assis BS, Jairza JMB, Lopes JA, et al. Micronutrient intake in elderly living in nursing homes. *Nutr Hosp.* 2018;35(1):59-64.
15. Keller HH, Lengyel C, Carrier N, et al. Prevalence of inadequate micronutrient intakes of Canadian long-term care residents. *Br J Nutr.* 2018;119(9):1047-1056.
16. Agarwal S, Reider C, Brooks JR, Fulgoni VL 3rd. Comparison of prevalence of inadequate nutrient intake based on body weight status of adults in the United States: an analysis of NHANES 2001-2008. *J Am Coll Nutr.* 2015;34(2):126-134.
17. Farhat G, Lees E, Macdonald-Clarke C, Amirabdollahian F. Inadequacies of micronutrient intake in normal weight and overweight young adults aged 18-25 years: a cross-sectional study. *Public Health.* 2019;167:70-77.
18. Frankenfeld CL, Wallace TC. Multivitamins and nutritional adequacy in middle-aged to older Americans by obesity status. *J Diet Suppl.* 2019:1-14.
19. Liu J, Zhu X, Fulda KG, Chen S, Tao MH. Comparison of dietary micronutrient intakes by body weight status among Mexican-American and non-Hispanic black women aged 19-39 years: an analysis of NHANES 2003-2014. *Nutrients.* 2019;11(12):2846.
20. Lee S, Lee E, Maneno MK, Johnson AA, Wutoh AK. Predictive factors of vitamin D inadequacy among older adults in the United States. *Int J Vitam Nutr Res.* 2019;89(1-2):55-61.
21. Bailey RL, Akabas SR, Paxson EE, Thuppal SV, Saklani S, Tucker KL. Total usual intake of shortfall nutrients varies with poverty among US adults. *J Nutr Educ Behav.* 2017;49(8):639-646.e633.
22. Cowan AE, Jun S, Tooze JA, et al. Total usual micronutrient intakes compared to the dietary reference intakes among U.S. adults by food security status. *Nutrients.* 2019;12(1):38.
23. Hurt RT, McClave SA. Nutritional assessment in primary care. *Med Clin North Am.* 2016;100(6):1169-1183.
24. Burch E, Ball L, Somerville M, Williams LT. Dietary intake by food group of individuals with type 2 diabetes mellitus: a systematic review. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract.* 2018;137:160-172.
25. Lupoli R, Lembo E, Saldalamacchia G, Avola CK, Angrisani L, Capaldo B. Bariatric surgery and long-term nutritional issues. *World J Diabetes.* 2017;8(11):464-474.
26. Cowan AE, Jun S, Gahche JJ, et al. Dietary supplement use differs by socioeconomic and health-related characteristics among U.S. adults, NHANES 2011-2014. *Nutrients.* 2018;10(8):1114.
27. Prescott JD, Drake VJ, Stevens JF. Medications and micronutrients: identifying clinically relevant interactions and addressing nutritional needs. *J Pharmacol Technol.* 2018;34(5):216-230.

28. American Diabetes Association. 3. Prevention or delay of type 2 diabetes: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes-2020. *Diabetes Care*. 2020;43(suppl 1):S32-S36.
29. Lam JR, Schneider JL, Zhao W, Corley DA. Proton pump inhibitor and histamine 2 receptor antagonist use and vitamin B12 deficiency. *JAMA*. 2013;310(22):2435-2442.
30. Lam JR, Schneider JL, Quesenberry CP, Corley DA. Proton pump inhibitor and histamine-2 receptor antagonist use and iron deficiency. *Gastroenterology*. 2017;152(4):821-829.e821.
31. Heidelbaugh JJ. Proton pump inhibitors and risk of vitamin and mineral deficiency: evidence and clinical implications. *Ther Adv Drug Saf*. 2013;4(3):125-133.
32. Hammond N, Wang Y, Dimachkie MM, Barohn RJ. Nutritional neuropathies. *Neurol Clin*. 2013;31(2):477-489.
33. Treesattayakul B, Winuprasith T, Theeranuluk B, Trachootham D. Loss of posterior occluding teeth and its association with protein-micronutrients intake and muscle mass among Thai elders: a pilot study. *J Frailty Aging*. 2019;8(2):100-103.
34. Schupbach R, Wegmuller R, Berguerand C, Bui M, Herter-Aeberli I. Micronutrient status and intake in omnivores, vegetarians and vegans in Switzerland. *Eur J Nutr*. 2017;56(1):283-293.
35. Freedman MR, King J, Kennedy E. Popular diets: a scientific review. *Obes Res*. 2001;9(suppl 1):1s-40s.
36. Ma Y, Pagoto SL, Griffith JA, et al. A dietary quality comparison of popular weight-loss plans. *J Am Diet Assoc*. 2007;107(10):1786-1791.
37. Calton JB. Prevalence of micronutrient deficiency in popular diet plans. *J Int Soc Sports Nutr*. 2010;7:24.
38. Gardner CD, Kim S, Bersamin A, et al. Micronutrient quality of weight-loss diets that focus on macronutrients: results from the A TO Z study. *Am J Clin Nutr*. 2010;92(2):304-312.
39. Pascual RW, Phelan S, La Frano MR, Pilolla KD, Griffiths Z, Foster GD. Diet quality and micronutrient intake among long-term weight loss maintainers. *Nutrients*. 2019;11(12):3046.
40. Engel MG, Kern HJ, Brenna JT, Mitmesser SH. Micronutrient gaps in three commercial weight-loss diet plans. *Nutrients*. 2018;10(1):108.
41. The National Academies of Sciences Engineering and Medicine. *Dietary Reference Intakes Tables and Application*. Published 2020. http://nationalacademies.org/hmd/Activities/Nutrition/SummaryDRIs/DRI-Tables.aspx. Accessed February 12, 2020.
42. Blumberg JB, Cena H, Barr SI, et al. The use of multivitamin/multimineral supplements: a modified delphi consensus panel report. *Clin Ther*. 2018;40(4):640-657.
43. Miller ER, 3rd, Pastor-Barriuso R, Dalal D, Riemersma RA, Appel LJ, Guallar E. Meta-analysis: high-dosage vitamin E supplementation may increase all-cause mortality. *Ann Intern Med*. 2005;142(1):37-46.
44. Goralczyk R. Beta-carotene and lung cancer in smokers: review of hypotheses and status of research. *Nutr Cancer*. 2009;61(6):767-774.
45. Kim J, Choi J, Kwon SY, et al. Association of multivitamin and mineral supplementation and risk of cardiovascular disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Circ Cardiovasc Qual Outcomes*. 2018;11(7):e004224.
46. Chen F, Du M, Blumberg JB, et al. Association among dietary supplement use, nutrient intake, and mortality among U.S. adults: a cohort study. *Ann Intern Med*. 2019;170(9):604-613.
47. Fortmann SP, Burda BU, Senger CA, Lin JS, Whitlock EP. Vitamin and mineral supplements in the primary prevention of cardiovascular disease and cancer: an updated systematic evidence review for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. *Ann Intern Med*. 2013;159(12):824-834.
48. Butler M, Nelson VA, Davila H, et al. Over-the-counter supplement interventions to prevent cognitive decline, mild cognitive impairment, and clinical alzheimer-type dementia: a systematic review. *Ann Intern Med*. 2018;168(1):52-62.
49. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. *FDA 101: Dietary Supplements*. Published 2015. https://www.fda.gov/consumers/consumer-updates/fda-101-dietary-supplements. Accessed February 24, 2020.
50. Kushner RF. Providing nutritional care in the office practice: teams, tools, and techniques. *Med Clin North Am*. 2016;100(6):1157-1168.
51. Kimokoti RW, Millen BE. Nutrition for the prevention of chronic diseases. *Med Clin North Am*. 2016;100(6):1185-1198.

An Individualized, Case-Based Approach to the Management of Irritable Bowel Syndrome

Brian E. Lacy, MD, PhD, FACG

CONTINUING MEDICAL EDUCATION

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Describe the multiple symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) and their impact on quality of life
- Use a staged strategy for the diagnostic evaluation of IBS based on history and physical examination, including Rome IV criteria
- Individualize treatment for IBS based on an evolving understanding of pathophysiologic mechanisms using evidence-based therapies to address patient concerns and improve quality of life

TARGET AUDIENCE

Family physicians and clinicians who wish to gain increased knowledge and greater competency regarding primary care management of irritable bowel syndrome.

DISCLOSURES

As a continuing medical education provider accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME), Primary Care Education Consortium (PCEC) requires any individual in a position to influence educational content to disclose any financial interest or other personal relationship with any commercial interest. This includes any entity producing, marketing, re-selling or distributing health care goods or services consumed by, or used on, patients. Mechanisms are in place to identify and resolve any potential conflict of interest prior to the start of the activity. In addition, any discussion of off-label, experimental, or investigational use of drugs or devices will be disclosed by the faculty.

Dr. Lacy discloses that he serves on scientific advisory boards for Salix, Arena, and Ironwood Pharmaceuticals and has received an unrelated grant from Salix.

Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, editorial support, discloses he has no real or apparent conflicts of interests to report. Additional PCEC staff report no conflicts of interest.

SPONSORSHIP

This activity is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium, in collaboration with the Primary Care Metabolic Group.

ACCREDITATION

The Primary Care Education Consortium is accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME) to provide continuing medical education for physicians.

CREDIT DESIGNATION

AMA PRA Category 1 – Primary Care Education Consortium designates this enduring material for a maximum of 1.0 AMA PRA Category 1 credit(s)™. Physicians should claim only the credit commensurate with the extent of their participation in the activity. CME is available September 1, 2020 to August 31, 2021.

METHOD OF PARTICIPATION

PHYSICIANS: To receive CME credit, please read the journal article and, on completion, go to www.pceconsortium.org/ibs to complete the online post-test and receive your certificate of completion.

PHYSICIAN ASSISTANTS AND NURSE PRACTITIONERS: AANP, ANCC, and AAPA accept certificates of participation of educational activities certified for AMA PRA Category 1 Credit™ from organizations accredited by ACCME.

SUPPORTER

This article is supported by an educational grant from Allergan and Ironwood Pharmaceuticals.

FACULTY

Brian E. Lacy, MD, PhD, FACG, Co-Editor in Chief, American Journal of Gastroenterology, Professor of Medicine, Senior Associate Consultant, Mayo Clinic, Jacksonville, FL

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Editorial support was provided by Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, at the Primary Care Education Consortium (PCEC).

BURDEN OF DISEASE

Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS) is a common gastrointestinal (GI) disorder that affects 10% to 15% of the US population.[1] IBS is more prevalent in women and in persons younger than 50 years.[2] IBS is characterized by recurrent abdominal pain and altered bowel habits; bloating and distention frequently coexist. Based on the predominant bowel habit pattern, IBS is classified as constipation-predominant (IBS-C), diarrhea-predominant (IBS-D), or a mixed pattern of constipation and diarrhea (IBS-M).[3]

Patients with IBS-D have significantly lower self-esteem than healthy controls[4] and patients with IBS-C.[5] Regardless of which type of IBS a patient may have, IBS sufferers report significantly greater symptom severity than patients with

inflammatory bowel disease (IBD).[6] Approximately one-third of people with IBS-D experience mild symptoms, one-half have moderate symptoms, and 1 in 8 have severe symptoms.[7] The IBS in America survey showed that three-quarters of persons with IBS symptoms tried an average of 3.6 nonprescription products before seeking medical care.[8,9] Abdominal pain was the most common reason people sought medical care.

CASE STUDY 1

SC is a 25-year-old woman with symptoms of constipation that began in high school, persisted through college, and worsened over the last 3 years. She reports skipping 1 to 2 days without having a bowel movement; she has significant straining at stool. Her stool is often hard and difficult to evacuate. She describes pressure and pain in her lower abdomen that is present more days than not. The abdominal pain generally improves after having a bowel movement. She frequently feels bloated and jokes that her boyfriend says that she sometimes looks "pregnant" because of the gas.

Adding more fiber to her normal fiber diet (25 g/d) made her more bloated, while stool softeners provided no benefit. SC has taken large amounts of magnesium citrate, which only caused urgent diarrhea and did not help with the abdominal pain or bloating. A trial of polyethylene glycol helped the constipation, but did not improve the abdominal pain or bloating.

She reports that her weight has been stable over the last few years (body mass index [BMI] 22). Her recent gynecologic exam, including a pregnancy test and complete blood count (CBC), was normal. Her only medication is an oral contraceptive. SC has not had any abdominal surgeries and she is otherwise healthy. No family member has IBD, celiac disease, or any type of GI malignancy. Her physical exam in the office is normal other than mild discomfort in the left lower quadrant. A rectal examination, with a chaperone present, is normal.

SC asks what her diagnosis is, whether she needs a colonoscopy, and whether other treatment options are available.

"What do you think I have? Do I need a colonoscopy?"

The diagnosis of IBS can be made by taking a careful history (medical, surgical, dietary, psychological) and asking about potential warning signs or "red flags." These signs include unexplained anemia, evidence of GI bleeding, unintentional weight loss, age >45 years without prior colon cancer screening, and family history of colorectal cancer or IBD. In addition to the history, the diagnosis is also based on a careful physical examination, ideally based on the Rome IV criteria (https://theromefoundation.org/rome-iv/whats-new-for-rome-iv/).[3] In addition to facilitating making a positive diagnosis instead of a diagnosis of exclusion, the Rome IV criteria are also useful to categorize IBS as IBS-C, IBS-D, or IBS-M.[3]

The Rome IV criteria are clinically useful for the accurate diagnosis of IBS. The criteria state that patients should have abdominal pain ≥1 day per week on average associated with ≥2 of the following symptoms: pain related to defecation, pain associated with a change in stool frequency, or pain associated with a change in stool form.[3] Symptoms should be active within the prior 3 months and should have developed at least 6 months earlier. Unlike previous Rome criteria, Rome IV criteria now suggest limited testing. This testing includes (1) a CBC to ensure the absence of anemia; (2) C-reactive protein (CRP) and/or fecal calprotectin to lower the suspicion for IBD and to prevent indiscriminate use of colonoscopy; and (3) serologic testing to rule out celiac disease.[3,10] In patients without red flag symptoms, further testing does not increase the sensitivity of the diagnosis.[11,12] Patients who may benefit from colonoscopy have warning signs or persistent symptoms, despite appropriate therapy, especially women age >60 years with persistent diarrhea, in whom microscopic colitis is a concern.

"What is the treatment for IBS-C?"

In 2018, the American College of Gastroenterology (ACG) published updated recommendations for the treatment of IBS based on a systematic review.[13] Nonpharmacologic therapy such as fiber, nonprescription laxatives, and stool softeners generally comprise initial therapy, but treatment satisfaction is low.[8,9] Three prosecretory medications are approved in the United States for IBS-C: linaclotide and plecanatide, both of which are guanylate cyclase C agonists, and lubiprostone, a chloride channel activator. All 3 are strongly recommended by the ACG for overall symptom improvement for IBS-C based on prospective, randomized controlled trials (RCTs). The use of lubiprostone is limited to women age ≥18 years. Patients treated with a prosecretory medication should be educated about the possible occurrence of severe diarrhea requiring treatment discontinuation and rehydration.

The efficacy and safety of linaclotide are supported by 4 RCTs involving 2867 patients with IBS-C.[13] Patients treated with linaclotide were less likely to remain symptomatic compared with placebo (relative risk [RR] 0.81; 95% confidence interval [CI], 0.77-0.85). Reduction in abdominal pain was significantly greater with linaclotide.

The use of lubiprostone and plecanatide is supported by 3 RCTs for each medication involving 1366 and 2612 patients with IBS-C, respectively.[13] Patients treated with lubiprostone (RR 0.91; 95% CI, 0.87-0.95) or plecanatide (RR 0.88; 95% CI, 0.84-0.92) were less likely to remain symptomatic compared with placebo.

CASE STUDY 1 (CONTINUED)

SC was told that, based on her history and examination, she had IBS-C. A colonoscopy was not recommended given her age and the absence of warning signs. She was started on once-daily linaclotide 290 µg. During a follow-up telephone call 2 weeks later, she reported that she was having a bowel movement each day and that her bloating and discomfort were better.

CASE STUDY 2

HP is a 51-year-old man with an 8-year history of loose, watery, bowel movements and lower abdominal pain. Symptoms occurred after he took antibiotics for a dental procedure and developed *Clostridium difficile* colitis. He has been tested multiple times for *C. difficile* and all studies have been negative. Laboratory studies (CBC, basic metabolic panel, CRP) have been normal on multiple occasions and a recent fecal calprotectin was also normal. A screening colonoscopy, including random biopsies throughout the colon, at age 50 years was normal.

On an average day, he has 5 to 6 loose, urgent bowel movements. His lower abdominal pain improves temporarily after having a bowel movement but then returns. He describes intermittent bloating and a feeling of "gassiness." He has eliminated dairy and caffeine from his diet without benefit. Loperamide helps the diarrhea to some degree, but does not help the abdominal pain or bloating. Despite these symptoms, he has gained weight over the past 5 years and is now overweight, with a BMI of 27.

The physical examination is normal other than mild tenderness in the left lower quadrant. He is worried because a cousin had similar symptoms and was diagnosed with Crohn's disease. No first-degree family member has had colorectal cancer or IBD, although his aunt has celiac disease.

HP is frustrated and has several questions.

"Why are my test results normal?"

This patient has had diarrhea and other symptoms for many years, but does not have any warning signs on history or physical examination (he is not anemic, has no weight loss, no history of colorectal cancer or IBD in a first-degree family member, and no serious findings on physical examination). In addition, laboratory tests and stool studies have been normal. These findings all increase the likelihood that his symptoms represent a functional GI disorder, such as IBS, rather than an organic disorder. Further evidence supporting the diagnosis of IBS are a normal CBC and CRP.

In patients with chronic diarrhea, it is also recommended that fecal calprotectin be measured to help distinguish IBS from IBD.[14] A fecal calprotectin level ≤40 µg/g combined with a normal CRP essentially excludes IBD in patients with IBS symptoms. In this patient, both a fecal calprotectin and a CRP were normal. Finally, serologic testing for celiac disease should be performed in patients with persistent diarrhea symptoms.[15] This was performed at the time of the office visit (with assurance that the patient had been ingesting some wheat-containing products within the past 2 weeks) and the results were normal, effectively excluding the diagnosis of celiac disease.

"Why did my symptoms develop?"

The etiology and pathophysiology of IBS are complex and incompletely understood. In addition to genetics, insults to the GI tract (eg, infections, inflammation, surgery, ischemia, medications, stress) may alter the gut microbiome, disrupt the immune system, and change both GI motility and sensation.[15,16] Identification of these factors and their interaction with the brain suggest that IBS is a disorder of gut-brain interactions.[17,18]

In HP's case, the prior GI infection (*C difficile* colitis) likely led to the development of his IBS symptoms. In fact, considerable evidence indicates that a prior acute infectious gastroenteritis is the strongest risk factor for IBS, occurring in 4% to 36% of patients.[19-21] Microbial factors may exert effects on the immune system and gut barrier function, as well as the gut-brain axis.[18,22] The prevailing theory is that IBS-D is associated in some patients with bacterial overgrowth in the small intestine that impairs gut motility, whereas IBS-C is associated in some patients with increased levels of archaea that slow intestinal contractility.[22]

"What is the role of diet in treating my symptoms?"

Many patients with IBS associate symptoms of abdominal pain, bloating, or diarrhea with eating a meal. Thus, dietary interventions appear to be a reasonable treatment approach. The addition of a soluble fiber product to the diet that has a low rate of fermentation (eg, psyllium) may improve IBS symptoms in some patients.[13] However, fiber products, especially insoluble fiber, may worsen bloating and abdominal pain. No large prospective studies have assessed the utility of soluble fiber in patients with IBS-D.[13]

The 2 diets most commonly used for the treatment of IBS are a low/no gluten diet and a low FODMAP (fermentable oligo-, di-, monosaccharide, and polyol) diet.[13,23] Routine use of a gluten-free diet is not recommended due to the low-quality evidence supporting its use.[23] Patients who note improvement on a low/no gluten diet likely improve not because they are allergic to wheat or have celiac disease, but rather because gluten contains a large amount of fructan, a short-chain carbohydrate that can cause gas, bloating, distension, and diarrhea.[24]

An analysis of 7 RCTs evaluating the efficacy of a low

FODMAP diet to treat IBS symptoms showed improvement in overall IBS symptoms compared with control diets.[23] The ACG recommends this diet as a reasonable approach, recognizing that the quality of evidence is very low.[13] It is important to remember that the elimination phase of the low FODMAP diet should be carried out for only 4 to 6 weeks, to minimize the likelihood of micronutrient deficiencies. Foods should then be reintroduced slowly.

"What about using a probiotic to improve my symptoms?"

Because alterations in the gut microbiome can lead to symptoms of IBS, modulating the gut microbiome with a probiotic appears to make sense. Probiotics, defined as ". . . live microorganisms that, when administered in adequate amounts, confer a health benefit on the host,"[25] come in a wide array of formulations and doses. A recent meta-analysis of 53 RCTs showed that probiotics were more likely to improve symptoms of IBS compared with placebo, although the results were not overwhelming.[26] Probiotics containing a mixture of different organisms, especially those with *Lactobacillus* and *Bifidobacteria*, appear to be better than probiotics that contain only a single organism.[13,26] Based on low-quality evidence, the ACG gave probiotics, as a class, a weak recommendation.[13]

"Will an antibiotic improve my IBS-D symptoms?"

Treating patients with IBS-D with a course of antibiotics has been shown to be effective.[27] The most commonly studied antibiotic for the treatment of IBS without constipation (both IBS-D and IBS-M) is rifaximin, a nonabsorbable antibiotic. Although its mechanism for improving IBS symptoms is unclear, several large, prospective RCTs have demonstrated that a dose of 550 mg 3 times daily for 14 days is both safe and effective (number needed to treat [NNT] = 9).[13,26,27] In contrast to other medications or diets, which need to be used chronically, a 2-week course of rifaximin may improve symptoms for up to 12 weeks.

Recognizing that IBS is a chronic condition for most patients, authors of a recent study demonstrated that repeated dosing with rifaximin was both safe and effective.[28] Because a validated treatment algorithm for the treatment of IBS-D does not exist, a precise answer of when to use rifaximin for the treatment of IBS-D symptoms cannot be provided. However, if a patient has not had symptom improvement after trying dietary therapy and over-the-counter agents, then rifaximin is a reasonable choice.

"Are other treatment options available?"

Loperamide is often used for IBS-D, but there is little evidence to support its use and it does not improve either the cardinal symptom of IBS—abdominal pain—or bloating. Consequently, the ACG recommends against the use of loperamide to treat overall IBS symptoms.[13]

Eluxadoline acts as an agonist on the mu- and kappa-opioid receptors, while it is an antagonist on the delta-opioid receptor.[29] Three large RCTs showed that eluxadoline, at either the 75- or 100-mg dose, was more likely to improve overall IBS-D symptoms (both diarrhea and abdominal pain) than placebo (NNT=9-10).[29] Consequently, eluxadoline is recommended by the ACG to treat overall IBS-D symptoms, although the recommendation is weak because of some heterogeneity in the published studies.[13] This medication should not be used in patients who have undergone cholecystectomy or in patients who abuse alcohol, as these 2 factors are associated with the development of pancreatitis.[30] However, eluxadoline would be a reasonable treatment option for HP.

Another treatment option for IBS-D is alosetron, a serotonin antagonist. Several large, randomized placebo-controlled studies have demonstrated that alosetron can improve symptoms of abdominal pain, diarrhea, and urgency in women with symptoms of IBS-D in whom standard therapy has failed (NNT=7.5).[13,31] A more recent, real-world, dose-titration study, using the lower dose of 0.5 mg twice daily with dose escalation as needed, found an overall response rate of 45% with few adverse effects.[32] Alosetron has been associated with rare events of ischemic colitis. Alosetron is not approved for men and, thus, would not be an appropriate treatment option for this patient.

A review of the safety profile of all medications used to treat IBS-D symptoms was recently published.[33]

CASE STUDY 3

RE is a 57-year-old woman with symptoms of alternating constipation and diarrhea. Symptoms began in her mid-40s, primarily characterized by lower abdominal pain and symptoms of constipation (skipping days without a bowel movement, hard to evacuate stool, harder stool). As there was no evidence of an organic disorder, she was diagnosed with IBS-C at the time. She was treated with polyethylene glycol and as-needed use of smooth muscle antispasmodic agents, which provided some relief of her constipation symptoms, but not much relief of her abdominal pain.

Approximately 18 months ago, RE noted that she began having 1 or 2 days per week with loose, urgent bowel movements. The other days were characterized by stool that was harder and somewhat difficult to evacuate. She increased her use of polyethylene glycol, resulting in stool that was often loose and unpredictable.

She finds that daily loperamide controls the diarrhea, but worsens the constipation and accompanying abdominal pain. Bloating is present most days and she frequently feels distended. She has not changed her diet, exercise routine, or prescription medications (levothyroxine for hypothyroidism, loratadine for mild seasonal allergies, and paroxetine for mild anxiety). She has gained approximately 1 pound per year for the past 10 years (BMI 28).

A recent gynecologic exam was normal. Because her bowel habits had changed, her gynecologist referred her for a colonoscopy, which was normal. A CBC, thyroid-stimulating hormone level, and serum tissue transglutaminase antibody with serum immunoglobulin A (IgA) also were normal. Her physical exam in the office is normal other than mild discomfort in the left lower quadrant. A rectal examination, with a chaperone present, is normal. No family member has colorectal cancer, celiac disease, or IBD.

RE is particularly bothered by bloating, and the urgent diarrhea makes it difficult to attend meetings at work and participate in social events. She is worried that the change in bowel habits represents something serious such as a hidden cancer.

Treatment plan for this patient

The natural history of IBS and how bowel habits frequently change over time (from IBS-C to IBS-M or IBS-M to IBS-D or IBS-D to IBS-M; less commonly directly from IBS-C to IBS-D) was reviewed with RE. IBS-M occurs in approximately one-quarter of patients with IBS, while IBS-D occurs in 40% and IBS-C in 35%.[2] This patient did not have any red flags on history or exam. Recent laboratory findings, gynecologic examination, and colonoscopy were all normal. As no medication is US Food and Drug Administration approved for IBS-M, and because bloating was a predominant symptom, we decided to institute a low FODMAP diet. She did this for 4 weeks and noted a significant improvement in general IBS symptoms, although her constipation became a bit worse. Improvement of 1 symptom and worsening of another with treatment is not unusual.

RE slowly reintroduced foods per the low FODMAP protocol to identify trigger foods. We decided that she should take a little more polyethylene glycol each day for the constipation symptoms. To help with visceral pain and bowel urgency, we added a neuromodulator at a low dose, ie, amitriptyline 10 mg at bedtime. Tricyclic antidepressants have been shown to improve symptoms of abdominal pain in patients with IBS (NNT = 4.5).[13] We discussed routine scheduled bathroom time in the morning to help empty her lower colon, with the goal of minimizing symptoms of urgent diarrhea later in the day. To prevent urgent diarrhea, RE began to use one-half of a 1-mg loperamide tablet 1 hour before a business meeting or social event. After 4 weeks, she reported feeling 50% better and a bit less anxious about urgent diarrhea. This latter point underscored the importance of addressing the patient's fears and concerns as such support can dramatically improve a patient's quality of life. Having identified several foods that made her bloating much worse, she continued on the low FODMAP diet. With the goal of reducing her symptoms further, she continued on low-dose amitriptyline, but we increased the dose to 20 mg at bedtime. At her visit 4 weeks later, she reported not using any loperamide since her last visit and that she felt 80% better. Because she was generally satisfied with her symptoms, we decided to make no further changes. ●

REFERENCES

1. International Foundation for Gastrointestinal Disorders. *Reporter's Guide to Irritable Bowel Syndrome*. 2nd edition. Published 2018. https://iffgd.org/images/library/Reporters_Guide/ReportersGuideIBS.pdf. Accessed May 12, 2020.
2. Lovell RM, Ford AC. Global prevalence of and risk factors for irritable bowel syndrome: a meta-analysis. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2012;10(7):712-721.e714.
3. Lacy BE, Mearin F, Chang L, et al. Bowel disorders. *Gastroenterology*. 2016;150:1393-1407.
4. Grodzinsky E, Walter S, Viktorsson L, Carlsson AK, Jones MP, Faresjo A. More negative self-esteem and inferior coping strategies among patients diagnosed with IBS compared with patients without IBS—a case-control study in primary care. *BMC Fam Pract*. 2015;16:6.
5. Singh P, Staller K, Barshop K, et al. Patients with irritable bowel syndrome-diarrhea have lower disease-specific quality of life than irritable bowel syndrome-constipation. *World J Gastroenterol*. 2015;21(26):8103-8109.
6. Lee AD, Spiegel BM, Hays RD, et al. Gastrointestinal symptom severity in irritable bowel syndrome, inflammatory bowel disease and the general population. *Neurogastroenterol Motil*. 2017;29(5).
7. Buono JL, Carson RT, Flores NM. Health-related quality of life, work productivity, and indirect costs among patients with irritable bowel syndrome with diarrhea. *Health Qual Life Outcomes*. 2017;15(1):35.
8. The America Gastroenterological Association. *IBS in America survey summary findings*. Published December 2015. http://www.multivu.com/players/English/7634451-aga-ibs-in-america-survey/docs/survey-findings-pdf-635473172.pdf. Accessed May 14, 2020.
9. Rangan V, Ballou S, Shin A, Camilleri M, Lembo A. Use of treatments for irritable bowel syndrome and patient satisfaction based on the IBS in America survey. *Gastroenterology*. 2020;158(3):786-788.e781.
10. Ford AC, Lacy BE, Talley NJ. Irritable bowel syndrome. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;376(26):2566-2578.
11. Begtrup LM, Engsbro AL, Kjeldsen J, et al. A positive diagnostic strategy is noninferior to a strategy of exclusion for patients with irritable bowel syndrome. *Clin Gastroenterol Hepatol*. 2013;11(8):956-962.e951.
12. Engsbro AL, Begtrup LM, Kjeldsen J, et al. Patients suspected of irritable bowel syndrome—cross-sectional study exploring the sensitivity of Rome III criteria in primary care. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2013;108(6):972-980.
13. Ford AC, Moayyedi P, Chey WD, et al. *American College of Gastroenterology Monograph on Management of Irritable Bowel Syndrome*. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2018;113(Suppl 2):1-18.
14. Menees SB, Powell C, Kurlander J, Goel A, Chey WD. A meta-analysis of the utility of C-reactive protein, erythrocyte sedimentation rate, fecal calprotectin, and fecal lactoferrin to exclude inflammatory bowel disease in adults with IBS. *Am J Gastroenterol*. 2015;110(3):444-454.
15. Drossman DA. Functional gastrointestinal disorders: history, pathophysiology, clinical features and Rome IV. *Gastroenterology*. 2016;150(6):1262-1279.
16. Barbara G, Grover M, Bercik P, et al. Rome foundation working team report on post-infection irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology*. 2019;156(1):46-58.e47.
17. Drossman DA, Hasler WL. Rome IV-functional GI disorders: disorders of gut-brain interaction. *Gastroenterology*. 2016;150(6):1257-1261.
18. Chong PP, Chin VK, Looi CY, Wong WF, Madhavan P, Yong VC. The microbiome and irritable bowel syndrome—a review on the pathophysiology, current research and future therapy. *Front Microbiol*. 2019;10:1136.
19. Shah ED, Riddle MS, Chang C, Pimentel M. Estimating the contribution of acute gastroenteritis to the overall prevalence of irritable bowel syndrome. *J Neurogastroenterol Motil*. 2012;18(2):200-204.
20. Wensaas KA, Langeland N, Hanevik K, Morch K, Eide GE, Rortveit G. Irritable bowel syndrome and chronic fatigue 3 years after acute giardiasis: historic cohort study. *Gut*. 2012;61(2):214-219.
21. Marshall JK, Thabane M, Garg AX, Clark WF, Salvadori M, Collins SM. Incidence and

epidemiology of irritable bowel syndrome after a large waterborne outbreak of bacterial dysentery. *Gastroenterology.* 2006;131(2):445-450; quiz 660.
22. Pimentel M, Lembo A. Microbiome and its role in irritable bowel syndrome. *Dig Dis Sci.* 2020;65(3):829-839.
23. Dionne J, Ford AC, Yuan Y, et al. A systematic review and meta-analysis evaluating the efficacy of a gluten-free diet and a low FODMAPs diet in treating symptoms of irritable bowel syndrome. *Am J Gastroenterol.* 2018;113(9):1290-1300.
24. Skodje GI, Sarna VK, Minelle IH, et al. Fructan, rather than gluten, induces symptoms in patients with self-reported non-celiac gluten sensitivity. *Gastroenterology.* 2018;154(3):529-539.e522.
25. Hill C, Guarner F, Reid G, et al. Expert consensus document. The International Scientific Association for Probiotics and Prebiotics consensus statement on the scope and appropriate use of the term probiotic. *Nat Rev Gastroenterol Hepatol.* 2014;11(8):506-514.
26. Ford AC, Harris LA, Lacy BE, Quigley EMM, Moayyedi P. Systematic review with meta-analysis: the efficacy of prebiotics, probiotics, synbiotics and antibiotics in irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther.* 2018;48(10):1044-1060.
27. Pimentel M, Lembo A, Chey WD, et al. Rifaximin therapy for patients with irritable bowel syndrome without constipation. *N Engl J Med.* 2011;364(1):22-32.
28. Lembo A, Pimentel M, Rao SS, et al. Repeat treatment with rifaximin is safe and effective in patients with diarrhea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Gastroenterology.* 2016;151(6):1113-1121.
29. Lembo AJ, Lacy BE, Zuckerman MJ, et al. Eluxadoline for irritable bowel syndrome with diarrhea. *N Engl J Med.* 2016;374(3):242-253.
30. Cash BD, Lacy BE, Schoenfeld PS, Dove LS, Covington PS. Safety of eluxadoline in patients with IBS-D without a gallbladder. *Am J Gastroenterol.* 2017;112(10):1619-1620.
31. Ford AC, Brandt LJ, Young C, Chey WD, Foxx-Orenstein AE, Moayyedi P. Efficacy of 5-HT3 antagonists and 5-HT4 agonists in irritable bowel syndrome: systematic review and meta-analysis. *Am J Gastroenterol.* 2009;104(7):1831-1843; quiz 1844.
32. Lacy BE, Nicandro JP, Chuang E, Earnest DL. Alosetron use in clinical practice: significant improvement in irritable bowel syndrome symptoms evaluated using the US Food and Drug Administration composite endpoint. *Therap Adv Gastroenterol.* 2018;11:1756284818771674.
33. Lacy BE. Review article: an analysis of safety profiles of treatments for diarrhoea-predominant irritable bowel syndrome. *Aliment Pharmacol Ther.* 2018;48(8):817-830.

A New Era in Asthma Management: Assessment of Asthma Control

Kevin R. Murphy, MD; Joel Solis, MD

BURDEN OF DISEASE

Asthma is recognized as a chronic, heterogenous disease characterized by airway inflammation and a history of respiratory symptoms (eg, wheeze, shortness of breath, chest tightness, or cough) that vary over time and in intensity.[1] Variations are often triggered by factors such as exercise, allergen or irritant exposure, change in weather, or viral respiratory tract infections. Asthma symptoms and airflow limitation may resolve spontaneously or in response to treatment. Symptoms may be absent for weeks or months, yet airway hyperresponsiveness related to chronic airway inflammation usually persists.[1]

Asthma is a common disease in children, adolescents, and adults that results in substantial morbidity and utilization of health care resources.[2] In 2018, there were an estimated 5.5 million children and 19.2 million adults in the United States with asthma, of whom 45% had ≥1 asthma attack.[2] In 2016, there were nearly 10 million office visits with asthma as a primary diagnosis.[2] One-third (33.1%) of adults with asthma report their health as fair or poor.[3] Anxiety, depression, and asthma control are independent predictors of diminished health-related quality of life in people with asthma.[4]

Kevin R. Murphy, MD, Director, Clinical Research, Allergy, Asthma and Pediatric Pulmonology, Boys Town National Research Hospital, Boys Town, NE.

Joel Solis, MD, Valley Medical Arts Clinic, The University of Texas Rio Grande Valley, McAllen, TX.

DISCLOSURES

Dr. Murphy discloses that he serves on the advisory board and/or speakers' bureau for AstraZeneca, Genentech, Glaxo Smith Kline, Novartis, and Sanofi Regeneron. Dr. Solis and Dr. Scott have no disclosures to report.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Editorial support was provided by Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, at the Primary Care Education Consortium (PCEC).

SPONSORSHIP

This activity is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and the Primary Care Respiratory Group and supported by funding from AstraZeneca Pharmaceuticals LP.

PCRG-US
Primary Care Respiratory Group

The economic burden of asthma, including costs incurred by absenteeism and mortality, was estimated at $82 billion in 2013.[5] By comparison, the total economic burden – including lost productivity – has been estimated at $330 billion for heart disease and stroke and $327 billion for diabetes.[6] The 20-year estimated burden of direct and indirect costs associated with asthma is $964 billion, with a loss of 15.5 million quality-adjusted life-years in adolescents and adults.[7]

A key factor contributing to the burden of disease associated with asthma is poor adherence to treatment by patients.[8-10] A variety of additional factors contribute, including limited understanding among patients about asthma and its treatment, as well as poor patient-clinician communication.[11-13] Discordance regarding asthma control is common between patients and clinicians.[14] Patients often overestimate their asthma control[15] or may tolerate symptoms indicative of poor control based on the belief that the symptoms are part of living with asthma.[16] Collectively, these factors contribute to suboptimal asthma control.

ASSESSING ASTHMA CONTROL

Asthma control means the extent to which the effects of asthma either can be seen in the patient or have been reduced or resolved by treatment. Asthma control has 2 domains: symptom control and risk factors for future poor outcomes, particularly flare-ups (exacerbations). It is important to assess the patient's future risk for exacerbations, even when symptom control is good. Risk factors for exacerbations that are independent of symptom control include a history of ≥1 exacerbation in the previous year, socioeconomic disadvantages, poor treatment adherence, incorrect inhaler technique, low lung function, smoking, and blood eosinophilia.[1]

Many tools are available to assess asthma control and are listed in the **TABLE**.[17-26] Of those tools, the Asthma Impairment and Risk Questionnaire (AIRQ) and Asthma Control Test (ACT) are validated for patients age ≥12 years and have numerically scored questions providing total scores and cut points for varying levels of asthma control. The ACT (**FIGURE 1**) is limited to assessing symptom control with no direct measure of future risk.[19,20,23]

TABLE. **Tools for assessing asthma control**

Tool	Focus		Target patient age (y)	Administered by	No. of items	Recall time
	Symptoms	Risk				
Asthma APGAR[17,18]	✓	✓	5-45	Self	6	2 wk (symptoms and risk)
Asthma Control Questionnaire[19]	✓		≥11	Self	7	1 wk
	✓		6-10	HCP	7	1 wk
Asthma Control Test[20]	✓		≥12	Self	5	4 wk
Asthma Control and Communication Instrument[21]	✓	✓	≥12	Self	12	Since last visit (symptoms and risk)
Asthma Impairment and Risk Questionnaire[22]	✓	✓	≥12	Self/HCP	10	2 wk (symptoms); 1 year (risk)
Childhood Asthma Control Test[23]	✓		4-11	Self/parent	7	4 wk (symptoms); 1 year (risk)
Composite Asthma Severity Index[24]	✓	✓	6-17	HCP	8	2 wk (symptoms); 2 mo (risk)
Pediatric Asthma Control and Communication Instrument[25]	✓	✓	≤21	Self/parent	12	2 wk (symptoms); since last visit/2 mo (risk)
Test for Respiratory and Asthma Control in Kids[26]	✓	✓	<5	Parent	5	4 wk (symptoms); 12 mo (risk)

Abbreviations: HCP, health care professional.

ASTHMA IMPAIRMENT AND RISK QUESTIONNAIRE

To address the gaps in commonly used tools for assessing asthma control, the Asthma Impairment and Risk Questionnaire (AIRQ) was recently developed.[22] The AIRQ was devised using a modified Delphi process by a network of 190 US scientific experts and primary and specialty care clinicians with diverse practice experiences in geographic areas representing a high burden of disease. The AIRQ was validated using patients (N=442) from geographically diverse US allergy/immunology and pulmonology clinics. The symptom control domain of the AIRQ was validated against the ACT, whereas the future risk domain was validated against the patient's prior-year exacerbations as documented in their medical record. From the initial 15 questions that assessed symptom control and risk, the final questionnaire includes 10 dichotomous (yes or no) questions, 7 focusing on symptom control and 3 on future risk (**FIGURE 2**).[49] The 10 questions evaluate symptoms, social and physical activities, exacerbations, related health care resource utilization, perception of asthma control, and use of rescue medications. The AIRQ score ranges from 0 to 10. A score of 0 or 1 indicates asthma is well-controlled, whereas a score of 2 to 4 indicates asthma is not well-controlled. A score of 5 to 10 indicates asthma is very poorly controlled.

The AIRQ performed exceptionally well, including a superior comparison to the ACT.[20,22] Importantly, as shown in the AIRQ validation study, 31% of patients classified as well-controlled by ACT score (≥20) had suffered ≥1 exacerbation in the previous year, suggesting limitations in using ACT as a sole measure of asthma control.[22] Inclusion of the wide array of items in AIRQ to assess both symptom control and future risk identified many patients with exercise limitations and exacerbations that were characterized by acute treatment with oral corticosteroids or emergency department/unplanned office visits, events that are not assessed by the ACT or many other asthma control tools for patients age ≥12 years.

MANAGEMENT OF PATIENTS WITH UNCONTROLLED ASTHMA

The most up-to-date recommendations for managing patients with uncontrolled asthma (discussed below) were released by Global Initiative for Asthma (GINA) in 2020.[1] Updated recommendations by the National Asthma Education and Prevention Program (NAEPP) Expert Panel Report-4 (EPR-4) have been circulated in draft form and are currently being finalized.

Patients found to have uncontrolled asthma should continue to receive care that meets their clinical and personal needs and capabilities. A key step in managing a patient with uncontrolled asthma is to confirm the asthma diagnosis. If not done as part of assessing asthma control, lung function should be measured. In addition, reevaluation of asthma control is appropriate to ensure that the treatment plan is consistent with recommended evidence-based therapy.

Attention should be paid to verify that all modifiable

FIGURE 1. **Asthma Control Test**[48]

asthma.com

Name: _____ **Today's Date:** _____

ASTHMA CONTROL TEST™

Know your score.

The Asthma Control Test™ provides a numerical score to help you and your healthcare provider determine if your asthma symptoms are well controlled.

Take this test if you are 12 years or older. Share the score with your healthcare provider.

Step 1: Write the number of each answer in the score box provided.

Step 2: Add up each score box for the total.

Step 3: Take the completed test to your healthcare provider to talk about your score.

IF YOUR SCORE IS 19 OR LESS, **Your asthma symptoms may not be as well controlled as they could be. No matter what the score, bring this test to your healthcare provider to talk about the results.**

NOTE: If your score is 15 or less, your asthma may be very poorly controlled. Please contact your healthcare provider right away. There may be more you and your healthcare provider could do to help control your asthma symptoms.

					SCORE
1. In the past 4 weeks, how much of the time did your asthma keep you from getting as much done at work, school or at home?					
All of the time **[1]**	Most of the time **[2]**	Some of the time **[3]**	A little of the time **[4]**	None of the time **[5]**	.....
2. During the past 4 weeks, how often have you had shortness of breath?					
More than Once a day **[1]**	Once a day **[2]**	3 to 6 times a week **[3]**	Once or twice a week **[4]**	Not at all **[5]**	.....
3. During the past 4 weeks, how often did your asthma symptoms (wheezing, coughing, shortness of breath, chest tightness or pain) wake you up at night or earlier than usual in the morning?					
4 or more nights a week **[1]**	2 to 3 nights a week **[2]**	Once a week **[3]**	Once or twice **[4]**	Not at all **[5]**	.....
4. During the past 4 weeks, how often have you used your rescue inhaler or nebulizer medication (such as albuterol)?					
3 or more times per day **[1]**	1 to 2 times per day **[2]**	2 or 3 times per week **[3]**	Once a week or less **[4]**	Not at all **[5]**	.....
5. How would you rate your asthma control during the past 4 weeks?					
Not Controlled at All **[1]**	Poorly Controlled **[2]**	Somewhat Controlled **[3]**	Well Controlled **[4]**	Completely Controlled **[5]**	.....

TOTAL: .....

This material was developed by GSK.

[https://www.asthma.com/additional-resources/asthma-control-test.html]

[This Web Site has been developed as a service of GlaxoSmithKline. Like any other service, in spite of our (GSK) best efforts the information in this Web Site may become out of date over time. Nothing on this Web Site should be construed as the giving of advice or the making of a recommendation and it should not be relied on as the basis for any decision or action. It is important that you rely only on the advice of a health care professional to advise you on your specific situation. GlaxoSmithKline accepts no liability for the accuracy or completeness or use of, nor any liability to update, the information contained on this Web Site. These materials are provided "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some jurisdictions do not allow the exclusion of implied warranties, so the above exclusion may not apply to you.]

FIGURE 2. **Asthma Impairment and Risk Questionnaire**[49]

PRECISION

Asthma Impairment and Risk Questionnaire (AIRQ™)

For use by health care providers with their patients 12 years and older who have been diagnosed with asthma. AIRQ™ is intended to be part of an asthma clinic visit.

Please answer all of the questions below.

In the past 2 weeks, has coughing, wheezing, shortness of breath, or chest tightness:

1. Bothered you during the day on **more than 4 days**? Yes No
2. Woke you up from sleep **more than 1 time**? Yes No
3. Limited the activities you want to do **every day**? Yes No
4. Caused you to use your rescue inhaler or nebulizer **every day**? Yes No


Primatene® MIST (Amphastar Pharmaceuticals) or Epinephrine


ProAir® HFA (Teva Respiratory, LLC) or Albuterol sulfate


ProAir RespiClick® (Teva Respiratory, LLC) or Albuterol sulfate


Proventil® HFA (Merck Sharp & Dohme Corp., a subsidiary of Merck & Co., Inc.) or Albuterol sulfate


Ventolin® HFA (GlaxoSmithKline) or Albuterol sulfate


Xopenex HFA® (Sunovion Pharmaceuticals Inc.) or Levalbuterol tartrate


Albuterol sulfate or Xopenex® (Sunovion Pharmaceuticals Inc.) or Levalbuterol HCl

Please see all prescribing information for all products.

In the past 2 weeks:

5. Did you have to limit your social activities (such as visiting with friends/relatives or playing with pets/children) because of your asthma? Yes No
6. Did coughing, wheezing, shortness of breath, or chest tightness limit your ability to exercise? Yes No
7. Did you feel that it was difficult to control your asthma? Yes No

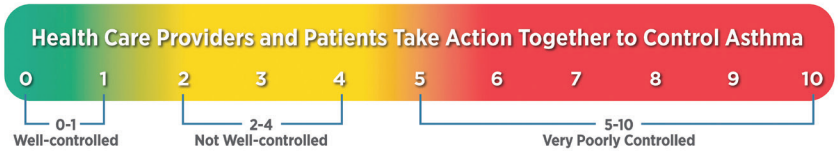
In the past 12 months, has coughing, wheezing, shortness of breath, or chest tightness:

8. Caused you to take steroid pills or shots, such as prednisone or Medrol®*? Yes No
9. Caused you to go to the emergency room or have unplanned visits to a health care provider? Yes No
10. Caused you to stay in the hospital overnight? Yes No

Total YES Answers ☐

What Does My AIRQ™ Score Mean?

The AIRQ™ is meant to help your health care providers talk with you about your asthma control. The AIRQ™ does not diagnose asthma. Whatever your AIRQ™ score (total **YES** answers), it is important for your health care team to discuss the number and answers to each of the questions with you. All patients with asthma, even those who may be well-controlled, can have an asthma attack. As asthma control worsens, the chance of an asthma attack increases.[1] Only your medical provider can decide how best to assess and treat your asthma.



*Medrol® (Pfizer, Inc.) or methylprednisolone

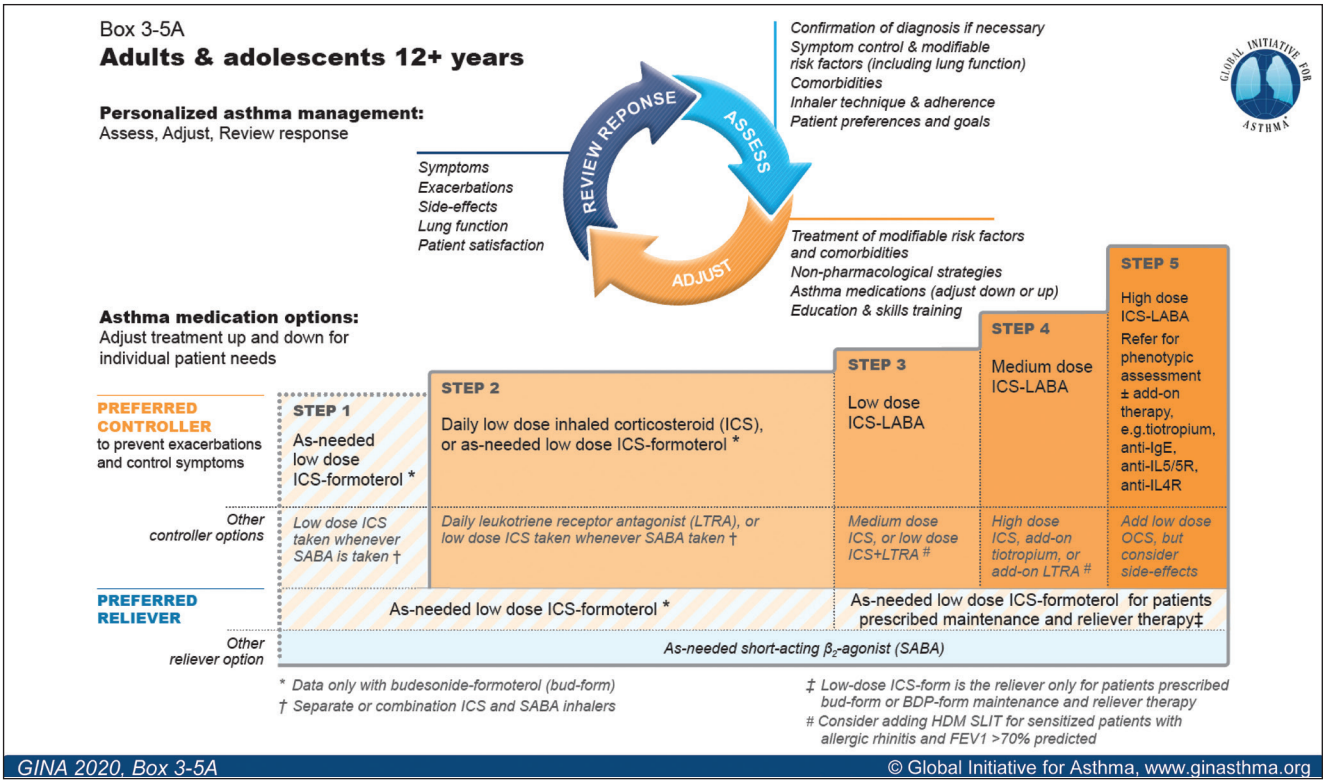
The trademarks depicted above are the property of their respective owners.

[1]Global Strategy for Asthma Management and Prevention: ©2020 Global Initiative for Asthma

[http://www.airqscore.com]

[AIRQ™ is a trademark of AstraZeneca. The AIRQ™ is reproduced with permission from AstraZeneca. AstraZeneca is the copyright owner of the AIRQ™. However, third parties will be allowed to use the AIRQ™ free of charge. The AIRQ™ must always be used in its entirety. Except for limited reformatting the AIRQ™ may not be modified or combined with other instruments without prior written approval. The ten questions of the AIRQ™ must appear verbatim, in order, and together as they are presented and not divided on separate pages. All copyright and trademark information must be maintained as it appears on the bottom of the AIRQ™ and on all copies. The layout of the final authorized AIRQ™ may differ slightly, but the item wording will not change.]

FIGURE 3. **Modifying treatment in adults and adolescents with uncontrolled asthma**[1]



Abbreviations: BDP, beclomethasone dipropionate; FEV1, forced expiratory volume in 1 second; HDM SLIT, house dust mite sublingual immunotherapy; ICS, inhaled corticosteroid; IgE, immunoglobulin E; IL5, interleukin-5; IL5R, interleukin-5 receptor; LABA, long-acting beta$_2$-agonist; LTRA, leukotriene receptor antagonist; OCS, oral corticosteroid; SABA, short-acting beta$_2$-agonist.

risk factors have been identified and appropriate treatment instituted. This strategy is particularly important for risk factors that do not require or respond to a step-up in controller treatment. Examples include poor inhaler technique, suboptimal treatment adherence, home and workplace atopic and irritant triggers, tobacco use or exposure, and comorbidities such as gastroesophageal reflux disease, nasal polyposis, obesity, and sleep apnea.

Patient understanding of asthma, treatment goals, and treatment options should be assessed and reinforced with further education. A guide for patients and families is available from the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (https://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/files/docs/public/lung/SoYouHaveAsthma_PRINT-reduced-filesize.pdf). Patients should be educated about the importance of the use of anti-inflammatory medications, because only 39% of adults and 40% of children with asthma use a long-term control medication.[27] In addition, patient education should include the importance of reducing the risk of exposure to allergens or other sensitizing agents.[1]

The patient's familiarity with their written asthma action plan should be assessed routinely, as this is an indicator of the patient's ability to self-manage their asthma. Patients should be invited to share difficulties they may be having with the action plan or any other issues that may affect treatment adherence. If difficulties are identified, focus a collaborative discussion on finding a solution that is acceptable to the patient and that they are able and willing to implement. Sample written action plans are available from the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute (https://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/health-topics/all-publications-and-resources/asthma-action-plan) and GINA (https://ginasthma.org/wp-content/uploads/2019/01/GINA-Implementation-Toolbox-2019.pdf).

Objective assessment of inhaler technique is especially important because proper technique has a direct impact on patient health outcomes and treatment tolerability.[28] Because administration errors with inhaled medications by patients are common, and clinicians are often unfamiliar with proper administration technique,[29-33] the use of authoritative patient education resources demonstrating proper inhaler technique – such as those by the Centers for

Disease Control and Prevention – is recommended (https://www.cdc.gov/asthma/inhaler_video/default.htm).

PHENOTYPES AND BIOMARKERS

The heterogeneous nature of asthma and the many clusters of demographic, clinical, and/or pathophysiologic characteristics point to the importance of recognizing asthma phenotypes and endotypes in patients with uncontrolled asthma.[1,34] Identifying the asthma phenotype is especially important for patients with moderate or severe uncontrolled asthma because some phenotype-specific treatments are available. For example, omalizumab is indicated for allergic asthma, whereas benralizumab, dupilumab, mepolizumab, and reslizumab are indicated for the eosinophilic phenotype.

Two peripheral biomarkers (Immunoglobulin E [IgE] and eosinophils) are particularly helpful in identifying asthma phenotype and guiding treatment. IgE is the predominant biomarker for allergic asthma that is produced early in the allergic cascade.[35] The serum IgE level correlates closely with the presence and severity of asthma in adults, adolescents, and children.[36,37]

Owing to the inflammatory nature of asthma, eosinophils are recruited through the complex interaction of cytokines and other inflammatory mediators.[38,39] The blood eosinophil count is more closely correlated with risk of asthma exacerbations.[40] Symptom severity is increased in eosinophilic asthma, although symptom severity is not identified exclusively with eosinophilia.[35,41-43]

KEY ASTHMA TREATMENT RECOMMENDATIONS

Global Initiative for Asthma

GINA was implemented in 1993 to develop a network of individuals, organizations, and public health officials for the dissemination of information related to the care of patients with asthma.[44] Another key purpose of GINA was to provide a mechanism to incorporate the results of scientific evidence into asthma care, leading to the first GINA report in 1995, developed in collaboration with the National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute. The report has been updated several times, and recently on a yearly basis, to reflect the totality of the evolving evidence. Consequently, the GINA report provides comprehensive recommendations for the diagnosis and treatment of patients with asthma.[1] Key recent changes include the recommendations that all adults and adolescents should be treated with an inhaled corticosteroid (ICS) to reduce the risk of severe exacerbations. In addition, treatment with only a short-acting beta$_2$-agonist is no longer recommended.

Specific recommendations for step-up therapy are beyond the scope of this article, as recommendations depend on the patient's current therapy and asthma control. Nonetheless, step-up therapy involves either increasing the dose of the current controller therapy or adding another controller medication. For example, a patient aged ≥12 years whose asthma is uncontrolled with the combination of a low-dose ICS plus a long-acting beta$_2$-agonist may benefit from increasing to a medium-dose ICS plus a long-acting beta$_2$-agonist (**FIGURE 3**).[1] Discussions with a patient about step-up therapy should consider affordability, as asthma care in the United States is associated with high rates of cost-related underuse of medications. Although the reason is unclear, suboptimal adherence to asthma medications does not appear to be directly related to income.[45] Any step-up should be regarded as a therapeutic trial, and the response reviewed after 2 to 3 months.[1] In some cases, for example, during viral infection or seasonal allergen exposure, the duration of step-up therapy may be only 1 to 2 weeks.

National Asthma Education and Prevention Program

The NAEPP was initiated in 1989 to address the growing health problem of asthma in the United States.[46] From the beginning, the NAEPP has involved a wide variety of stakeholder groups and organizations with the general goals to raise awareness among all asthma stakeholders about the importance of asthma, as well as to promote effective, evidence-based treatment so as to reduce the disease burden. The first guideline report was published in 1991, with subsequent updates and comprehensive revisions. The last comprehensive revision was the Expert Panel Report-3 in 2007. The EPR-4, which is a limited revision that focuses on 6 topics, is being finalized.[47]

SUMMARY

Asthma is often uncontrolled in patients of all ages and is frequently unrecognized, resulting in a significant burden of disease. Consequently, assessing asthma control at every opportunity is critical. A wide variety of tools to assess asthma control are available; however, many have clinically important limitations to their use. The AIRQ was developed recently to be more widely applicable, by assessing both symptom control and future risk domains. In patients with uncontrolled asthma, step-up therapy is generally required using evidence-based recommendations for treatment provided in the GINA 2020 report and soon-to-be-released NAEPP EPR-4 report. ●

REFERENCES

1. Global Initiative for Asthma. Global Strategy for Asthma Management and Prevention. 2020. https://ginasthma.org/wp-content/uploads/2020/04/GINA-2020-full-report_-final-_wms.pdf. Accessed May 1, 2020.
2. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Asthma. National data. 2020. https://www.cdc.gov/asthma/most_recent_national_asthma_data.htm. Accessed May 1,

2020.
3. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Asthma and fair or poor health. 2020. https://www.cdc.gov/asthma/asthma_stats/documents/AsthmaStats_Asthma_Fair_Poor_Health_508.pdf. Accessed May 1, 2020.
4. Gonzalez-Freire B, Vazquez I, Pertega-Diaz S. The relationship of psychological factors and asthma control to health-related quality of life. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract.* 2020;8(1):197-207.
5. Nurmagambetov T, Kuwahara R, Garbe P. The economic burden of asthma in the United States, 2008-2013. *Ann Am Thorac Soc.* 2018;15(3):348-356.
6. National Center for Chronic Disease Prevention and Health Promotion. Health and economic costs of chronic diseases. March 23, 2020. https://www.cdc.gov/chronicdisease/about/costs/index.htm. Accessed May 15, 2020.
7. Yaghoubi M, Adibi A, Safari A, FitzGerald JM, Sadatsafavi M. The projected economic and health burden of uncontrolled asthma in the United States. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* 2019;200(9):1102-1112.
8. Cardet JC, Busse PJ, Carroll JK, et al. Adherence to adding inhaled corticosteroids to rescue therapy in a pragmatic trial with adults with asthma: a pilot study. *Ann Allergy Asthma Immunol.* 2020;124(5):487-493.e481.
9. Dima AL, van Ganse E, Stadler G, de Bruin M. Does adherence to inhaled corticosteroids predict asthma-related outcomes over time? A cohort study. *Eur Respir J.* 2019;54(6):1900901.
10. Wu AC, Butler MG, Li L, et al. Primary adherence to controller medications for asthma is poor. *Ann Am Thorac Soc.* 2015;12(2):161-166.
11. Gibbons DC, Aggarwal B, Fairburn-Beech J, et al. Treatment patterns among non-active users of maintenance asthma medication in the United Kingdom: a retrospective cohort study in the Clinical Practice Research Datalink. *J Asthma.* 2020:1-12.
12. Kaplan A, Price D. Treatment adherence in adolescents with asthma. *J Asthma Allergy.* 2020;13:39-49.
13. Amin S, Soliman M, McIvor A, Cave A, Cabrera C. Understanding patient perspectives on medication adherence in asthma: a targeted review of qualitative studies. *Patient Prefer Adherence.* 2020;14:541-551.
14. Matsunaga K, Hamada K, Oishi K, Yano M, Yamaji Y, Hirano T. Factors associated with physician-patient discordance in the perception of asthma control. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract.* 2019;7(8):2634-2641.
15. Kritikos V, Price D, Papi A, et al. A multinational observational study identifying primary care patients at risk of overestimation of asthma control. *NPJ Prim Care Respir Med.* 2019;29(1):43.
16. Bidad N, Barnes N, Griffiths C, Horne R. Understanding patients' perceptions of asthma control: a qualitative study. *Eur Respir J.* 2018;51(6):1701346.
17. Yawn BP, Bertram S, Wollan P. Introduction of Asthma APGAR tools improve asthma management in primary care practices. *J Asthma Allergy.* 2008;1:1-10.
18. Yawn BP, Wollan PC, Rank MA, Bertram SL, Juhn Y, Pace W. Use of asthma APGAR tools in primary care practices: a cluster-randomized controlled trial. *Ann Fam Med.* 2018;16(2):100-110.
19. Juniper EF, Bousquet J, Abetz L, Bateman ED. Identifying 'well-controlled' and 'not well-controlled' asthma using the Asthma Control Questionnaire. *Respir Med.* 2006;100(4):616-621.
20. Nathan RA, Sorkness CA, Kosinski M, et al. Development of the Asthma Control Test: a survey for assessing asthma control. *J Allergy Clin Immunol.* 2004;113(1):59-65.
21. Patino CM, Okelo SO, Rand CS, et al. The Asthma Control and Communication Instrument: a clinical tool developed for ethnically diverse populations. *J Allergy Clin Immunol.* 2008;122(5):936-943.e936.
22. Murphy KR, Chipps B, Beuther DA, et al. Development of the Asthma Impairment and Risk Questionnaire (AIRQ): a composite control measure. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract.* 2020;doi:10.1016/j.jaip.2020.02.042.
23. Liu AH, Zeiger R, Sorkness C, et al. Development and cross-sectional validation of the Childhood Asthma Control Test. *J Allergy Clin Immunol.* 2007;119(4):817-825.
24. Wildfire JJ, Gergen PJ, Sorkness CA, et al. Development and validation of the Composite Asthma Severity Index–an outcome measure for use in children and adolescents. *J Allergy Clin Immunol.* 2012;129(3):694-701.
25. Okelo SO, Eakin MN, Patino CM, et al. The Pediatric Asthma Control and Communication Instrument asthma questionnaire: for use in diverse children of all ages. *J Allergy Clin Immunol.* 2013;132(1):55-62.
26. Murphy KR, Zeiger RS, Kosinski M, et al. Test for Respiratory and Asthma Control in Kids (TRACK): a caregiver-completed questionnaire for preschool-aged children. *J Allergy Clin Immunol.* 2009;123(4):833-839.e839.
27. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Asthma stats. Use of long-term control medication among persons with active asthma. 2020. https://www.cdc.gov/asthma/asthma_stats/Long_term_medication.pdf. Accessed May 1, 2020.
28. Maricoto T, Monteiro L, Gama JMR, Correia-de-Sousa J, Taborda-Barata L. Inhaler technique education and exacerbation risk in older adults with asthma or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a meta-analysis. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 2019;67(1):57-66.
29. Cho-Reyes S, Celli BR, Dembek C, Yeh K, Navaie M. Inhalation technique errors with metered-dose inhalers among patients with obstructive lung diseases: a systematic review and meta-analysis of U.S. studies. *Chronic Obstr Pulm Dis.* 2019;6(3):267-280.
30. Navaie M, Dembek C, Cho-Reyes S, Yeh K, Celli BR. Device use errors with soft mist inhalers: a global systematic literature review and meta-analysis. *Chron Respir Dis.* 2020;17:1479973119901234.
31. Plaza V, Giner J, Curto E, et al. Determinants and differences in satisfaction with the inhaler among patients with asthma or COPD. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract.* 2020;8(2):645-653.
32. Plaza V, Giner J, Rodrigo GJ, Dolovich MB, Sanchis J. Errors in the use of inhalers by health care professionals: a systematic review. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract.* 2018;6(3):987-995.
33. Lavorini F, Janson C, Braido F, Stratelis G, Lokke A. What to consider before prescribing inhaled medications: a pragmatic approach for evaluating the current inhaler landscape. *Ther Adv Respir Dis.* 2019;13:1753466619884532.
34. Kuruvilla ME, Lee FE, Lee GB. Understanding asthma phenotypes, endotypes, and mechanisms of disease. *Clin Rev Allergy Immunol.* 2019;56(2):219-233.
35. Kim H, Ellis AK, Fischer D, et al. Asthma biomarkers in the age of biologics. *Allergy Asthma Clin Immunol.* 2017;13:48.
36. Haselkorn T, Szefler SJ, Simons FE, et al. Allergy, total serum immunoglobulin E, and airflow in children and adolescents in TENOR. *Pediatr Allergy Immunol.* 2010;21(8):1157-1165.
37. Patelis A, Gunnbjornsdottir M, Malinovschi A, et al. Population-based study of multiplexed IgE sensitization in relation to asthma, exhaled nitric oxide, and bronchial responsiveness. *J Allergy Clin Immunol.* 2012;130(2):397-402.e392.
38. Korevaar DA, Westerhof GA, Wang J, et al. Diagnostic accuracy of minimally invasive markers for detection of airway eosinophilia in asthma: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Lancet Respir Med.* 2015;3(4):290-300.
39. Carr TF, Berdnikovs S, Simon HU, Bochner BS, Rosenwasser LJ. Eosinophilic bioactivities in severe asthma. *World Allergy Organ J.* 2016;9:21.
40. Price DB, Rigazio A, Campbell JD, et al. Blood eosinophil count and prospective annual asthma disease burden: a UK cohort study. *Lancet Respir Med.* 2015;3(11):849-858.
41. Miranda C, Busacker A, Balzar S, Trudeau J, Wenzel SE. Distinguishing severe asthma phenotypes: role of age at onset and eosinophilic inflammation. *J Allergy Clin Immunol.* 2004;113(1):101-108.
42. Wenzel SE. Asthma: defining of the persistent adult phenotypes. *Lancet.* 2006;368(9537):804-813.
43. Corren J. Inhibition of interleukin-5 for the treatment of eosinophilic diseases. *Discov Med.* 2012;13(71):305-312.
44. Bateman ED, Hurd SS, Barnes PJ, et al. Global strategy for asthma management and prevention: GINA executive summary. *Eur Respir J.* 2008;31(1):143-178.
45. Laba TL, Jan S, Zwar NA, et al. Cost-related underuse of medicines for asthma–opportunities for improving adherence. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract.* 2019;7(7):2298-2306.e2212.
46. National Asthma Education and Prevention Program. National Asthma Education and Prevention Program (NAEPP). 2020. https://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/science/national-asthma-education-and-prevention-program-naepp. Accessed May 20, 2020.
47. National Heart, Lung, and Blood Institute. Update on selected topics in asthma management: a report from the National Asthma Education and Prevention Program Coordinating Committee Expert Panel Working Group. 2020. https://www.nhlbi.nih.gov/about/advisory-and-peer-review-committees/national-asthma-education-and-prevention-program-coordinating/EPR4-working-group. Accessed May 20, 2020.
48. GlaxoSmithKline. Asthma Control Test. 2019. https://www.asthma.com/additional-resources/asthma-control-test.html. Accessed May 20, 2020.
49. Murphy KR, Chipps B, Beuther DA, et al. Asthma Impairment and Risk Questionnaire. 2020. http://www.airqscore.com. Accessed August 1, 2020.

Case Studies in Hyperlipidemia

Michael Cobble, MD, FNLA

INTRODUCTION

I had a conversation with a cardiologist 15 years ago at the American College of Cardiology annual meeting during which he asked a simple question regarding patients at intermediate risk for atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease (ASCVD) – "Why wait until they see me in the cath lab after a heart attack to treat their lipids?" The point that resonated with me was to target patients at intermediate risk before they have a life-changing event or even develop angina. This simple question changed my approach to managing patients with dyslipidemia, particularly those at intermediate risk for ASCVD who make up a large subgroup of the US population.[1] In fact, because we have 2 more decades of favorable evidence from statin outcome trials including safety data, my resolve to assess and treat patients at intermediate risk for ASCVD is stronger today.[2,3] Moreover, we have learned to better risk-stratify patients with various assessment tools and incorporation of epidemiologic data supporting use of risk-enhancing factors to identify those at higher CV risk because of comorbid conditions.[3]

In this article, I provide suggestions for identifying patients classified as "intermediate risk" for preventive care. According to the American College of Cardiology (ACC)/American Heart Association (AHA), these patients have a 10-year ASCVD risk score of ≥7.5% to <20%, but because of the presence of risk-enhancing factors, have a higher overall ASCVD risk.[3] Such factors are intended to guide the clinician and influence therapy initiation and degree of lowering low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C). Further, I provide recommendations to help navigate common clinical dilemmas when proper statin selection is imperative to avoid major drug interactions (DIs), prevent recurrence of adverse effects (AEs), and not aggravate coexisting conditions. Finally, I provide some thoughts about shared decision-making because it is essential to limit patient apprehension and achieve the individual's maximum tolerated statin and dosage.[2,3] These lessons are applicable in clinical practice as primary prevention.

Michael Cobble, MD, FNLA, Director, Canyon Medical Center, Adjunct Faculty, University of Utah, Salt Lake City, UT.

DISCLOSURES

Dr. Cobble has no conflicts to disclose. Jim Backes, PharmD, editorial support, discloses that he serves on the speakers' bureau for Kowa Pharmaceuticals. Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, editorial support, discloses that he has no real or apparent conflicts of interests to report.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Editorial support was provided by Jim Backes, PharmD, and Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, of the Primary Care Education Consortium.

SPONSORSHIP

This activity is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by funding from Kowa Pharmaceuticals.

CASE SCENARIO 1

ML is a 63-year-old Hispanic female, BP 142/86 mm Hg, on amlodipine 5 mg/d, mixed dyslipidemia with an LDL-C of 110 mg/dL, high-density lipoprotein cholesterol (HDL-C) of 49 mg/dL, and triglycerides of 185 mg/dL, while taking pravastatin, 20 mg/d. She reports that she "didn't feel good" on atorvastatin, 40 mg/d, and is hesitant to try a 3rd statin. She also states, "they can cause diabetes," and is concerned the statin is putting her at a higher risk of diabetes because of her family history.

Other labs: *fasting blood glucose (FBG) 101 mg/dL, A1C 5.9%, serum creatinine (SCr) 1 mg/dL; urinary analysis and hepatic transaminases are within normal limits.*

Body mass index (BMI) *31 kg/m², waist circumference: 91.5 cm (36 inches), (-) tobacco, (-) EtOH, walks 3x/week.*

Her ACC/AHA *10-year ASCVD risk score is 7.8%.*

Family history: *both parents developed type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) and ASCVD in their early 60s.*

According to the 2018 ACC/AHA Guideline on the Management of Blood Cholesterol, ML is considered "intermediate risk" because her 10-year ASCVD risk score is ≥7.5%.[3] This likely is underestimated because of factors not accounted for by the ASCVD risk calculator, including her family history of ASCVD and presence of metabolic syndrome (MetS), both of which are risk-enhancing factors.[3] Her risk score and the presence of risk enhancers indicate the need for moderate-intensity statin therapy to reduce LDL-C by 30% to 49%.

RISK-ENHANCING FACTORS FOR FURTHER RISK STRATIFICATION

To improve risk-stratification and guide initiation and

intensity of statin therapy, the 2018 ACC/AHA Cholesterol Guideline introduced risk-enhancing factors (**TABLE**).[3] The risk-enhancing factors have been identified primarily from epidemiologic data. When present, risk-enhancing factors indicate a greater overall ASCVD risk and are often proportional to the degree and duration of the specific condition. For example, the associated relative risk (RR) of ASCVD for diabetes mellitus (DM) with MetS is 2.35,[4,5] chronic kidney disease (CKD) ranges from approximately 1.4 to 3.3 depending on severity,[6,7] while systemic lupus erythematosus carries a RR of 6.4 for major cardiometabolic disease.[8] In ML's case, MetS increases her RR of ASCVD by 1.78, compared with no MetS.[4] Similarly, her family history of ASCVD, especially her mother experiencing a premature CV event (age <65), further increases ML's risk by approximately 2-fold. Therefore, her 10-year risk of a CV event is much higher than suggested by the 10-year ASCVD risk score alone.

STATIN-ASSOCIATED DIABETES MELLITUS

One component of MetS in ML is her impaired glycemic indices indicating prediabetes.[9] Her family history also is significant because both parents developed T2DM in their 60s. Understandably, ML expresses concern about statin-associated DM and does not want to further worsen her glucose parameters. Is her concern justified?

The Food and Drug Administration (FDA) and the European Medicines Agency (EMA) each released statements in 2012 about the association between statin therapy and elevated A1C and FBG,[10] and increased risk of new-onset diabetes (NOD) among those predisposed to DM.[11]

Numerous studies have solidified these statements, but with mixed results. Findings from meta-analyses of randomized-controlled trials (RCTs) have demonstrated significant but modest increases in glucose parameters.[12,13] An analysis evaluating data from 13 major RCTs noted a 9% increase in incident DM with statin therapy.[12] Conversely, a meta-analysis of observational studies reported a more robust association with statins (RR, 1.44; 95% confidence interval [CI] 1.31 to 1.58).[14] Differences among individual agents also have been evaluated, and most data indicate that statin potency and dosage play a role.[15] Specific statins appear less diabetogenic with no dose dependency.[16] Atorvastatin, rosuvastatin, and simvastatin have the strongest associations compared with minimal or no association with fluvastatin, lovastatin, pitavastatin, and pravastatin.[15] These findings are consistent with a study analyzing rates of NOD among Asian patients recently hospitalized for acute myocardial infarction and no DM at baseline.[17] During the approximately 3-year follow up, patients receiving rosuvastatin (10.4%) and atorvastatin (8.4%) reported significantly more instances of NOD compared with pitavastatin (3%).

Given the inconclusive data, the FDA and EMA indicate the risk/benefit ratio favors the use of statin therapy among patients at risk for DM.[10,11] Nonetheless, monitoring glycemic indices at baseline and during statin therapy is recommended.[13]

CASE SCENARIO 1 (CONTINUED)

Overall, ML's evaluation suggests a 10-year ASCVD risk above the 7.8% calculated by the ACC/AHA risk estimator and, therefore, the need to intensify therapy. The clinical challenge is to balance the need for more intensive therapy without reintroducing previously experienced statin AEs or aggravating the patient's already impaired glucose. If unsuccessful, medication nonadherence commonly manifests, resulting in elevated LDL-C and poor clinical outcomes.[18] ML's current lipid therapy is pravastatin, 20 mg/d, and although she reports no AEs, the agent is classified as a low-intensity statin with LDL-C reduction of <30%.[3] Because of her ASCVD risk, consider a safe, moderate-intensity statin that provides a 30% to 49% reduction in LDL-C and does not predispose her to a higher risk of NOD should be considered. Reasonable options include titrating to pravastatin 80 mg/d, or switching to pitavastatin, 2 to 4 mg/d, or rosuvastatin, 5 to 10 mg/d. To maintain adherence, shared decision-making and counseling regarding the risk/benefit ratio of statin therapy, including that the new statin is unlikely to worsen her glycemia, is essential.

CASE SCENARIO 2

RJ is a 56-year-old white male with human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) on antiretroviral therapy (ART).

BP 148/88 mm Hg, repeat 146/86 mm Hg (hypertension not treated).

Labs/procedures: *FBG 99 mg/dL, A1C 5.8%, SCr 1.2; hepatic transaminases, urinary analysis, prostate-specific antigen, and colonoscopy – all WNL.*

Lipid panel: *total cholesterol (TC) 192 mg/dL, HDL-C 46 mg/dL, triglycerides 180 mg/dL, LDL-C 110 mg/dL, non-HDL-C 146 mg/dL (all values similar to last 2 lipid profiles).*

BMI *29 kg/m^2, waist circumference 101.6 cm (40 inches), (-) tobacco (quit last year – 60-pack-year history), (+) EtOH 2 drinks/week, no formal exercise.*

Patient reports taking simvastatin in his 40s but discontinued because of fatigue and myalgias.

ACC/AHA *10-year ASCVD risk score 7.7%.*

Family history *is complicated by tobacco and alcohol abuse. He is aware of DM and ASCVD in the family, although details are limited.*

RJ has a mixed dyslipidemic pattern and is at intermediate risk of a primary event. His ASCVD risk score of 7.7% likely underrepresents his true risk because of the presence of numerous

TABLE. **General risk-enhancing factors for additional risk stratification[2]**

- **Family history of premature ASCVD** (males, age <55; females, age <65)
- **Primary hypercholesterolemia** (LDL-C 160-189 mg/dL; non-HDL 190-219 mg/dL)
  - **Metabolic syndrome** (increased waist circumference, elevated triglycerides (≥150 mg/dL), elevated blood pressure, elevated fasting blood glucose, and low HDL-C (<40 mg/dL in men; <50 mg/dL in women) are factors; >3 makes the diagnosis
- **Chronic kidney disease** (eGFR 15 to 59 mL/min/1.73 m_2, with or without albuminuria; not treated with dialysis or kidney transplant)
- **Chronic inflammatory conditions** such as psoriasis, RA, HIV/AIDs
- **History of premature menopause (age <40) and history of pregnancy-associated conditions that increase later ASCVD risk such as preeclampsia**
- **High-risk race/ethnicities** (eg, South Asian ancestry)
- **Lipid/biomarkers:** associated with increased ASCVD risk
  - **Persistently* elevated, primary hypertriglyceridemia** (≥175 mg/dL)
  - **If measured:**
    - **Elevated high-sensitivity C-reactive protein** (≥2 mg/L)
    - **Elevated Lp(a):** A relative indication for its measurement is family history of premature ASCVD. An Lp(a) ≥50 mg/dL constitutes a risk-enhancing factor especially at higher levels of Lp(a)
    - **Elevated apolipoprotein B** ≥130 mg/dL: A relative indication for its measurement would be triglyceride ≥200 mg/dL. A level ≥130 mg/dL corresponds to an LDL-C >160 mg/dL and constitutes a risk-enhancing factor
    - **Ankle-brachial index** <0.9

Abbreviations: AIDS, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome; ASCVD, atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease; DM, diabetes mellitus; eGFR, estimated glomerular filtration rate; HDL-C, high-density lipoprotein cholesterol; HIV, human immunodeficiency virus; LDL-C, low-density lipoprotein cholesterol; Lp(a), lipoprotein a; RA, rheumatoid arthritis.

*Optimally, 3 determinations

[a]Or on drug treatment for noted condition is also an indication

risk-enhancing factors including HIV, MetS, persistently elevated triglycerides, and possible family history of premature ASCVD.[3] According to the 2018 ACC/AHA Cholesterol Guideline, initiation of a moderate-intensity statin for an LDL-C reduction of 30% to 49% is favored because of his ASCVD risk score and multiple risk-enhancing factors.[3] For example, his HIV status elevates his ASCVD risk by nearly 3-fold compared to non-infected individuals, secondary to chronic inflammation and comorbid (mixed) dyslipidemia.[19] In addition, persistently elevated triglycerides are associated with a 1.37 RR increase in ASCVD.[20] As noted in case 1, a family history of premature ASCVD and MetS also increases RR of ASCVD by approximately 2.0 and 1.78, respectively.

DRUG INTERACTIONS

Statin-related AEs generally are not idiosyncratic in nature, but are caused by increased serum concentrations often resulting from a drug interaction.[21] Statin metabolism is a complex, multi-step process. The cytochrome P450 (CYP450) system plays a major role in metabolism as it does for several other drugs.[22] Approximately 75% of all medications are metabolized via CYP450, with 50% of such agents having affinity for the common CYP3A4 isoenzyme.[23] Current FDA labeling indicates lovastatin, simvastatin, and, to a lesser degree, atorvastatin most subject to DIs because of their high affinity for the CYP3A4 isoenzyme.[24-26] The remaining statins have less risk of major DIs.[22] Clinically relevant CYP3A4 inhibitors include azole antifungals, amiodarone, clarithromycin, erythromycin, HIV protease inhibitors (eg, boceprevir, telaprevir), diltiazem, verapamil, and grapefruit juice.[21,22,27]

Statin metabolism involves more than the CYP450 system. Other common drug transporters that may be involved include breast cancer-resistant protein (BCRP), P-glycoprotein (P-gp), organic anion-transporting polypeptides (OATPs), and multi-drug-resistant protein.[21,22] Inhibition of drug transporters, such as OATP1B1 and P-gp can also increase statin exposure. All statins are substrates for OATP transporters, especially OATP1B1, and common inhibitors include cyclosporine, erythromycin, and gemfibrozil. Importantly, cyclosporine inhibits multiple steps (eg, BCRP, OATP1B1, CYP3A4) in statin metabolism and can markedly elevate statin serum concentrations.[21,22] Further, cyclosporine has been implicated in many cases of rhabdomyolysis when co-administered with a statin.[28] Of all agents, cyclosporine may carry the most risk for major statin DIs and related AEs.[22]

In the case of RJ, his HIV status should alert the clinician to the importance of individualizing therapy due to the potential for major DIs and statin-related AEs.[22] The HIV population is especially prone to DIs because of complex medi-

cation regimens including the use of protease inhibitors. The FDA published a Drug Safety Communication in 2012 advising that the concomitant use of statins and protease inhibitors, which are commonly used for treating patients with HIV and hepatitis C virus, increases the risk of myopathy and rhabdomyolysis.[27] These cautions are included in current statin labeling.[24-27,29-32]

Similar to previously discussed CYP3A4 interactions, certain statins are contraindicated (lovastatin, simvastatin) with concomitant HIV protease inhibitors, while others have dose limitations and/or should be avoided depending on the interacting protease inhibitor (rosuvastatin, atorvastatin).[27] Information for fluvastatin is not available. Alternatively, pitavastatin and pravastatin have no limitations, precautions, or contraindications with HIV protease inhibitors.[22,27]

The HIV population is understudied with limited statin options, but are at significant risk for ASCVD because of risk-enhancing factors (eg, chronic inflammation, MetS).[19] The National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Disease is conducting a landmark outcome trial (REPRIEVE) involving 7770 patients that compares the effects of pitavastatin with placebo on composite CV events; results are expected in 2023.[33]

Because of the complexities of statin metabolism, there are 2 key areas to help the clinician recognize common DI pitfalls: 1) medications that are commonly used and have the most potential to inhibit statin metabolism, and 2) differences among individual statins regarding metabolic pathways. Using this practical approach should alert the clinician to high-risk medications, in hopes of preventing the negative outcomes associated with major statin DIs. To help guide prescribing and limit the risk of muscle injury, the FDA published 2 additional Drug Safety Communications involving restrictions on simvastatin and lovastatin.[10,34] For a more comprehensive discussion on clinically important statin DIs, see Kellick et al.[22]

CASE SCENARIO 2 (CONTINUED)

The risk of ASCVD for RJ is likely greater than the 7.7% determined from the ACC/AHA 10-year risk estimator. In addition to his noted risk-enhancing factors, MJ has an extensive smoking history, probable hypertension, and prediabetes. A structured lifestyle program could potentially improve the latter 2 risk factors.[2] The Diabetes Prevention Program demonstrated the benefits of exercise and modest weight loss on glucose metabolism. Those with prediabetes who adopted a structured lifestyle program have been shown to be nearly 60% less likely to develop T2DM.[35] Such findings emphasize the importance of diet and exercise for cardiometabolic conditions and the likelihood of limiting NOD with statin therapy.[2,3]

Given RJ's ASCVD risk, a moderate-intensity statin or maximally tolerated statin would be primary prevention to reduce the risk of a major CV event.[3] Being aware of potential DIs with his ART and previous intolerance is important. Appropriate choices from the FDA to safely reduce LDL-C by 30% to 49% include pitavastatin, 1 to 4 mg/d, or pravastatin, 40 to 80 mg/d, or limiting rosuvastatin to 5 to 10 mg/d.[27] It is possible that his previously reported statin AE might have been secondary to coadministration of simvastatin and ART, and markedly elevated simvastatin levels. Because RJ has a history of statin intolerance, consider starting with a lower dosage and gradually increasing. Other options to manage statin intolerance include initiating a long half-life agent (eg, atorvastatin, rosuvastatin) with an alternative dosing schedule such as twice weekly with gradual increase as tolerated. Adding ezetimibe would provide additional LDL-C reduction and generally does not worsen statin-related AEs.[36]

CASE SCENARIO 3

FF is a 59-year-old African American female with a family history of premature ASCVD (her father had a myocardial infarction at age 48). She is taking hydrochlorothiazide, 25 mg/d, for hypertension (average BP at home 138/68 mm Hg). Since her early 40s, she also has taken methotrexate, 12.5 mg once weekly, and glucosamine/chondroitin daily for rheumatoid arthritis (RA).
She follows a low-sodium diet; exercise involves daily stretching and walking for 20 minutes most days.
***BMI** 28 kg/m^2, (-) EtOH, (-) tobacco.*
***Labs:** hepatic transaminases, SCr, thyroid stimulating hormone and A1C - all WNL, high-sensitivity C-reactive protein (hsCRP) 3.8 mg/L, lipids: TC 194 mg/dL, HDL-C 53 mg/dL, triglycerides 135 mg/dL, LDL-C 114 mg/dL, non-HDL-C 141 mg/dL, lipoprotein (a) [Lp(a)] 56 mg/dL.*
***ACC/AHA** 10-year ASCVD risk score 8.0%.*

Once again, we have a patient at intermediate risk of a CV event with ASCVD risk greater than indicated by her ASCVD risk score of 8.0%.[3] Her notable risk-enhancing factors include a family history of premature ASCVD, chronic inflammation from RA, elevated hsCRP, and elevated Lp(a). The presence of RA elevates the RR of major cardiometabolic disease by 1.7.[8] Lp(a) is not routinely drawn and RR is variable, but measuring can be considered in those with a family history of premature ASCVD.[3] Further, her overall lipid profile is fairly unremarkable, possibly providing a false sense of limited ASCVD risk. Nonetheless, this is a patient that would benefit from statin therapy and LDL-C reduction of 30% to 49%.[3]

A common clinical challenge in patients such as FF is a hesitation to start a statin because her "cholesterol is fine." In such cases, measuring coronary artery calcium (CAC) or carotid intima-

Pearls and Pitfalls: Key Take-Home Messages

- Don't wait to start statin therapy until after a patient at intermediate risk has had a CV event.
- Most females age >55 or age males >45 years with ≥2 CV risk factors are at intermediate risk.
- The 10-year ACC/AHA risk estimator alone could underestimate an individual patient's CV risk.
- Including risk-enhancing factors provides a more accurate assessment of overall CV risk.
- The case scenarios demonstrate patients at "intermediate risk" with a wide range of 10-year ASCVD risk scores ≥7.5% to <20%, and how risk factors and enhancers are intended to guide therapy and intensity.
- The presence of 1 risk-enhancing factor can elevate the RR of ASCVD by approximately 1.25 to >6-fold.
- Patients at intermediate risk with unremarkable lipid profiles, but risk-enhancing factors, commonly "fall through the cracks" for ASCVD prevention.
- Individually risk-stratifying patients and individualizing statin selection are imperative for safe and effective LDL-C reduction.
- Some patient populations (eg, HIV) have elevated ASCVD risk, are prone to major DIs because of complex medication regimens, and have limited statin options.
- Be cognizant of statins metabolized by CYP3A4 (lovastatin, simvastatin, atorvastatin) and the potential for major DIs and significant statin-related AEs. Similarly, note other commonly prescribed agents (eg, cyclosporine, gemfibrozil, erythromycin) that are implicated in major statin DIs.
- Measure CAC or CIMT to further refine assessment if the risk decision is uncertain or issues surrounding statin therapy are present.
- We now have 3-plus decades of favorable statin outcome trials, including safety data. This is useful information when discussing the risk/benefit of statin therapy with patients.
- Engaging the patient in shared decision-making is especially helpful in patients who "feel fine" but are at increased CV risk or have experienced a statin-related AE and resist statin therapy.

media thickness (CIMT) to determine degree of atherosclerosis can help inform the decision.[3,37] The presence of substantial atherosclerotic burden with either measure favors initiation of statin therapy and the visualization of disease often resonates with patients.[37] Additionally, the inherent musculoskeletal complaints from her RA can be misinterpreted as statin associated myalgia. Patient counseling noting the presence of baseline myalgias and arthralgias can be helpful if the patient subsequently reports muscle-related symptoms thought to be from statin therapy.[18]

A frank clinician-patient risk discussion and shared decision-making when initiating statin therapy cannot be overemphasized. As part of this process, it is important to invite the patient to share their understanding of the disease and concerns they may have. FF is an example of a patient with an intermediate risk and significant risk-enhancing factors who would likely benefit from this type of discussion. Since she believes her "cholesterol is fine," informing her of the factors beyond cholesterol that elevate ASCVD risk, including her father's myocardial infarction at age 48 years, the chronic inflammation from her RA, and elevated Lp(a), would provide key insight and allow for a more informed decision. Finally, it is important to stress that the higher the ASCVD risk, the greater the benefit from statin therapy.[3] An informed patient who feels she has been part of the decision-making process is more likely to be adherent to therapy, resulting in improved clinical outcomes.[3] ●

REFERENCES:

1. Pencina MJ, Navar-Boggan AM, D'Agostino RB Sr, et al. Application of new cholesterol guidelines to a population-based sample. *N Engl J Med*. 2014;370:1422-1431.
2. Arnett DK, Blumenthal RS, Albert MA, et al. 2019 ACC/AHA Guideline on the Primary Prevention of Cardiovascular Disease. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2019:26029.
3. Grundy SM, Stone NJ, Bailey AL, et al. 2018 AHA/ACC/AACVPR/AAPA/ABC/ACPM/ADA/AGS/APhA/ASPC/NLA/PCNA guideline on the management of blood cholesterol: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2018:25709.
4. Gami AS, Witt BJ, Howard DE, et al. Metabolic syndrome and risk of incident cardiovascular events and death: a systematic review and meta-analysis of longitudinal studies. J *Am Coll Cardiol*. 2007;49(4):403-414.
5. Mottillo S, Filion KB, Genest J, et al. The metabolic syndrome and cardiovascular risk: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2010;56(14):1113-1132.
6. Baigent C, Blackwell L, Emberson J, et al. Efficacy and safety of more intensive lowering of LDL cholesterol: a meta-analysis of data from 170,000 participants in 26 randomised trials. *Lancet*. 2010;376(9753):1670-1681.
7. Matsushita K, van der Velde M, Astor BC, et al. Association of estimated glomerular filtration rate and albuminuria with all-cause and cardiovascular mortality in general population cohorts: a collaborative meta-analysis. *Lancet*. 2010;375(9731):2073-2081.
8. Dregan A, Chowienczyk P, Molokhia M. Cardiovascular and type 2 diabetes morbidity and all-cause mortality among diverse chronic inflammatory disorders. *Heart*. 2017;103(23):1867-1873.
9. Introduction: Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes—2020. *Diabetes Care*. 2020;43(Suppl 1):S1-S2.
10. US Food and Drug Administration. FDA Drug Safety Communication: Important safety label changes to cholesterol-lowering statin drugs. Published 2012. https://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/ucm293101.htm. Accessed April 1, 2020.
11. European Medicines Agency. HMG-CoA reductase inhibitors - Risk of new onset diabetes. Published 2012. https://www.ema.europa.eu/en/documents/report/monthly-report-pharmacovigilance-working-party-phvwp-december-2011-plenary-meeting_en.pdf. Accessed April 1, 2020.
12. Sattar N, Preiss D, Murray HM, et al. Statins and risk of incident diabetes: a collaborative meta-analysis of randomised statin trials. *Lancet*. 2010;375(9716):735-742.
13. Maki KC, Ridker PM, Brown WV, Grundy SM, Sattar N, The Diabetes Subpanel of the National Lipid Association Expert P. An assessment by the Statin Diabetes Safety Task Force: 2014 update. *J Clin Lipidol*. 2014;8(3 Suppl):S17-S29.
14. Casula M, Mozzanica F, Scotti L, et al. Statin use and risk of new-onset diabetes: a meta-analysis of observational studies. *Nutr Metab Cardiovasc Dis*. 2017;27(5):396-406.
15. Backes JM, Kostoff MD, Gibson CA, Ruisinger JF. Statin-associated diabetes mellitus: review and clinical guide. *South Med J*. 2016;109(3):167-173.
16. Taguchi I, Iimuro S, Iwata H, et al. High-dose versus low-dose pitavastatin in Japanese patients with stable coronary artery disease (REAL-CAD): A randomized superiority trial. *Circulation*. 2018;137(19):1997-2009.
17. Choi JY, Choi CU, Hwang S-Y, et al. Effect of pitavastatin compared with atorvastatin

and rosuvastatin on new-onset diabetes mellitus in patients with acute myocardial infarction. *Am J Cardiol*. 2018;122(6):922-928.
18. Cohen JD, Brinton EA, Ito MK, Jacobson TA. Understanding Statin Use in America and Gaps in Patient Education (USAGE): an internet-based survey of 10,138 current and former statin users. *J Clin Lipidol*. 2012;6(3):208-215.
19. Feinstein MJ, Nance RM, Drozd DR, et al. Assessing and refining myocardial infarction risk estimation among patients with human immunodeficiency virus: a study by the Centers for AIDS Research Network of Integrated Clinical Systems. *JAMA Cardiol*. 2017;2(2):155-162.
20. Di Angelantonio E, Sarwar N, Perry P, et al. Major lipids, apolipoproteins, and risk of vascular disease. *JAMA*. 2009;302(18):1993-2000.
21. Bellosta S, Corsini A. Statin drug interactions and related adverse reactions: an update. *Expert Opin on Drug Saf*. 2018;17(1):25-37.
22. Kellick KA, Bottorff M, Toth PP, The National Lipid Association's Safety Task F. A clinician's guide to statin drug-drug interactions. *J Clin Lipidol*. 2014;8(3 Suppl):S30-46.
23. Bottorff MB. Statin safety and drug interactions: clinical implications. *Am J Cardiol*. 2006;97(8a):27c-31c.
24. Zocor [package insert]. https://www.merck.com/product/usa/pi_circulars/z/zocor/zocor_pi.pdf. Published 2019. Accessed April 10, 2020.
25. Mevacor [package insert]. https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2012/019643s085lbl.pdf. Published 2012. Accessed April 10, 2020.
26. Lipitor [package insert]. https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2009/020702s056lbl.pdf. Published 2009. Accessed April 10, 2020.
27. US Food and Drug Administration. FDA Drug Safety Communication: Interactions between certain HIV or heptatitis C drugs and cholesterol-lowering statin drugs can increase the risk of muscle injury. https://www.fda.gov/Drugs/DrugSafety/ucm293877.htm. Published 2012. Accessed April 1, 2020.
28. Omar MA, Wilson JP. FDA adverse event reports on statin-associated rhabdomyolysis. *Ann Pharmacother*. 2002;36(2):288-295.
29. Crestor [package insert]. https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2010/021366s016lbl.pdf. Published 2010. Accessed April 10, 2020.
30. Lescol [package insert]. https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2012/021192s019lbl.pdf. Published 2012. Accessed April 10, 2020.
31. Pravachol [package insert]. https://packageinserts.bms.com/pi/pi_pravachol.pdf. Published 2016. Accessed April 10, 2020.
32. Livalo [package insert]. https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2019/022363s015lbl.pdf. Published 2019. Accessed April 10, 2020.
33. US National Library of Medicine - ClinicalTrials.gov. Evaluating the Use of Pitavastatin to Reduce the Risk of Cardiovascular Disease in HIV-Infected Adults (REPRIEVE). Published 2015. https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02344290. Accessed April 1, 2020.
34. U.S. Food and Drug Administration. New restrictions, contraindications, and dose limitations for Zocor (simvastatin) to reduce the risk of muscle injury. Published 2011. https://www.fda.gov/drugs/drug-safety-and-availability/fda-drug-safety-communication-new-restrictions-contraindications-and-dose-limitations-zocor. Accessed April 10, 2020
35. Orchard TJ, Temprosa M, Goldberg R, et al. The effect of metformin and intensive lifestyle intervention on the metabolic syndrome: The Diabetes Prevention Program randomized trial. *Ann Int Med*. 2005;142(8):611-619.
36. Backes JM, Ruisinger JF, Gibson CA, Moriarty PM. Statin-associated muscle symptoms-Managing the highly intolerant. *J Clin Lipidol*. 2017;11(1):24-33.
37. Mach F, Baigent C, Catapano AL, et al. 2019 ESC/EAS guidelines for the management of dyslipidaemias: lipid modification to reduce cardiovascular risk: The Task Force for the management of dyslipidaemias of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC) and European Atherosclerosis Society (EAS). *Eur Heart J*. 2020;41(1):111-188.

Current and Emerging Issues in the Management of Heart Failure in Primary Care

Robert Chilton, DO, FACC; Stephen Brunton, MD, FAAFP

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Describe the epidemiology of heart failure in people with diabetes mellitus.
- Implement evidence-based nonpharmacologic and pharmacologic therapies for heart failure with preserved ejection fraction and heart failure with reduced ejection fraction as recommended in current guidelines.
- Characterize the role of glucose-lowering medications, focusing on the sodium glucose cotransporter-2 inhibitors, for the treatment of people with type 2 diabetes mellitus.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Heart failure (HF) is a debilitating, often fatal disease that results in major health and socioeconomic consequences. The 5-year mortality rate for HF is similar to many types of cancer, eg, prostate, bladder, and colorectal cancers in men, and breast, colorectal, and ovarian cancers in women.[1] Far exceeding hospitalizations for heart attack, coronary artery disease, or atrial fibrillation, HF was the primary diagnosis for 978,135 hospitalizations in the United States in 2014.[2] Estimates are that the prevalence of HF will increase 46% from 2012, reaching >8 million adults in 2030.[3] A major factor contributing to this rising prevalence of HF is the increasing prevalence of obesity,[4] which serves as an independent risk factor for HF, as well as many other common risk factors for HF, such as coronary heart disease, diabetes mellitus, and hypertension.[5-8] In fact, people with type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM) have more than twice the risk of HF than people without T2DM.[3,9-12] Despite this strong association, the mechanism(s) for the increased risk of HF in people with T2DM is unclear, as some evidence indicates that lowering the blood glucose concentration does not necessarily result in improved cardiovascular (CV) outcomes.[13-16]

HF is the most common CV complication in people with T2DM[3] and is a common initial presentation of CV disease in T2DM.[11] While the median age at HF diagnosis in the general US adult population is 59 years, it is 56 years in people with diabetes and 55 years in people with obesity.[17] The onset of changes in the myocardium in people with T2DM generally precedes HF symptoms by several years, as shown by the SHORTWAVE trial.[18] The trial involved 386 people with T2DM (median duration ~5 years), of whom 68% had echocardiographic evidence of systolic and/or diastolic left ventricular dysfunction despite being clinically asymptomatic.

TYPES OF HEART FAILURE

Chronic HF has 2 distinct phenotypes. One is HF with reduced ejection fraction (HF*r*EF), or systolic HF, and the other is HF with preserved ejection fraction (HF*p*EF), primarily diastolic HF (**FIGURE 1**).[8] HF*r*EF is defined as a left ventricular ejection fraction ≤40%, while HF*p*EF is defined as an ejection fraction ≥50%. Approximately half of people with HF have HF*r*EF and the other half HF*p*EF.[19,20] A small subset of people have a midrange ejection fraction between 40% and 50%, with many similarities to HF*p*EF, and may also benefit from treatment.

Robert Chilton, DO, FACC, FAHA, MACOI, FSCAI, Professor of Medicine, Associate Program Director Interventional Cardiology, Director Catheterization Lab UT/Clinical Proteomics, Division of Cardiology, University of Texas Health Science Center, San Antonio, TX.

Stephen Brunton, MD, FAAFP, Adjunct Associate Professor, Touro University California, College of Osteopathic Medicine, Vallejo, CA; Executive Vice President for Education, Primary Care Education Consortium, Murrieta, CA.

DISCLOSURES

Dr. Chilton discloses that he is a consultant for MSD, Pfizer, Boston Scientific, Boehringer Ingelheim, Lilly, AstraZeneca, and Novo Nordisk.

Dr. Brunton discloses that he serves on the advisory boards of Abbott Diabetes, Sanofi, Xeris, Novo Nordisk, Janssen, Bayer, and AstraZeneca and on the speakers' bureau for Lilly, Novo Nordisk, AstraZeneca, Bayer, and Janssen.

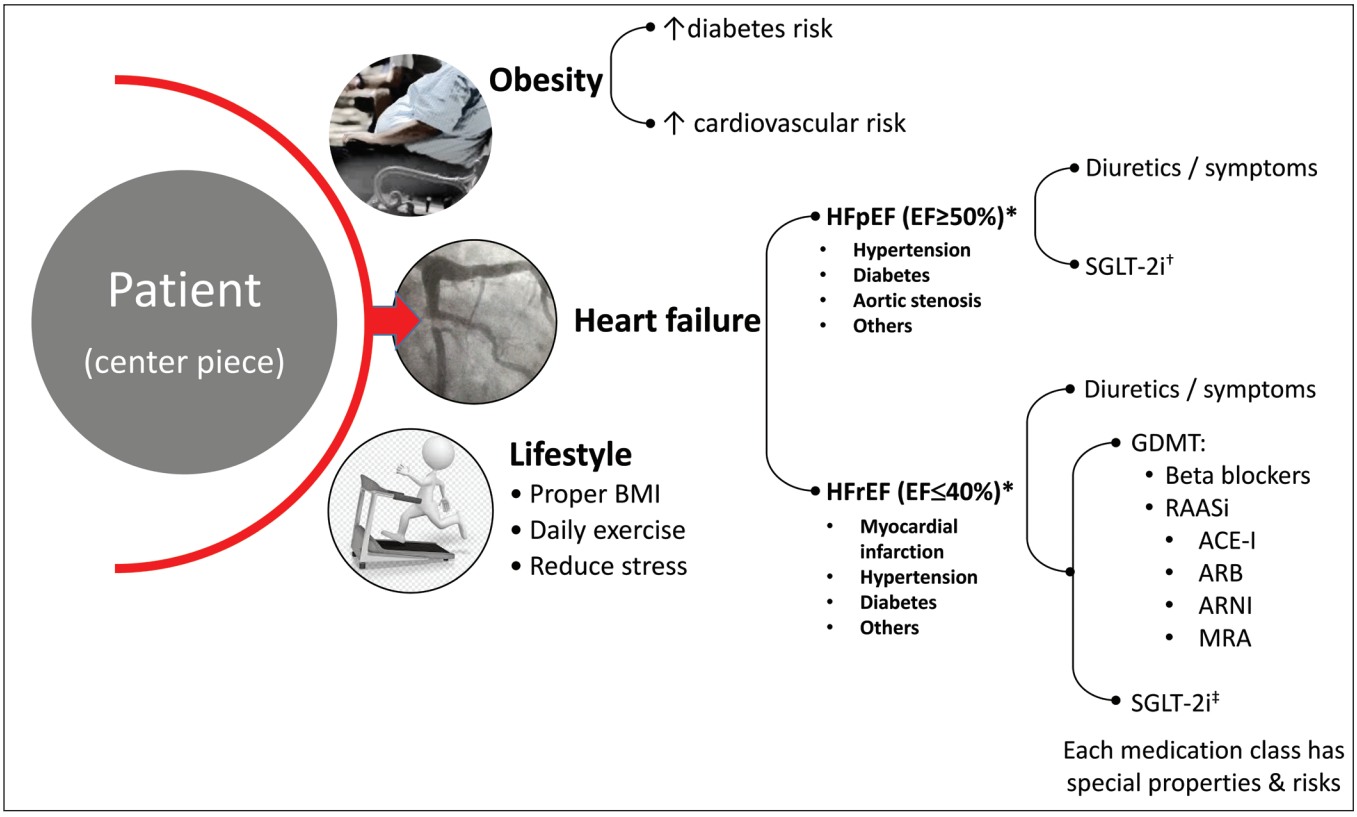
ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Editorial support was provided by Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, at the Primary Care Education Consortium (PCEC).

SPONSORSHIP

This activity is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and supported by funding from AstraZeneca Pharmaceuticals LP.

FIGURE 1. **Phenotypes of heart failure and key treatment options**



Abbreviations: ACE-I, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor; ARB, angiotensin receptor blocker; ARNI, angiotensin/neprilysin inhibitor; BMI, body mass index; EF, ejection fraction; GDMT, guideline-directed medical therapy; HF*p*EF, heart failure with preserved ejection fraction; HF*r*EF, heart failure with reduced ejection fraction; MRA, mineralocorticoid receptor antagonist; RAASi, renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system inhibitor; SGLT-2i, sodium glucose cotransporter-2 inhibitor.

* Patients with EF >40% to <50% are identified as either HF*p*EF borderline or HF*p*EF improved.

† Preliminary evidence suggests possible benefit with canagliflozin, dapagliflozin in HF*p*EF.

‡ Evidence indicates benefit with canagliflozin, dapagliflozin, empagliflozin in HF*r*EF, with greatest benefit with dapagliflozin.

HF*r*EF is most often caused by ischemic heart disease (myocardial infarction [MI]) and is characterized by the loss, function, and stretch of cardiomyocytes resulting in marked left ventricular enlargement and large increases in circulating natriuretic peptides, eg, brain natriuretic peptide (BNP).[21] Consequently, drugs that interfere with neurohormonal systems (eg, angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitors [ACE-Is], angiotensin receptor blockers [ARBs], beta-blockers, mineralocorticoid receptor antagonists [MRAs], and neprilysin inhibitors) have been used to treat people with HF*r*EF. More recently a new class of agents, sodium glucose cotransporter-2 inhibitors (SGLT-2is), has shown clinical benefit in reducing hospitalization for HF in patients with or without diabetes. In addition, both SGLT-2is and glucagon-like-receptor agonists (GLP-1RAs) currently used for the treatment of diabetes were found to reduce CV events with important kidney protection.[22,23] Patients with HF in general have systemic and adipose tissue inflammation that results in microvascular dysfunction and myocardial fibrosis. Patients with HF*p*EF frequently have a small stroke volume with thick ventricular walls, in contrast to patients with HF*r*EF, who have a large stroke volume and thin ventricular walls. Treatment of HF with a diuretic is recommended acutely for symptomatic relief of shortness of breath due to pulmonary edema, while beta-blockers and neurohormonal antagonists have ongoing effects of improved ventricular remodeling and reduction of cardiac events. SGLT-2is have been found to have acute benefits of reduction in CV events and improved kidney function. Studies with GLP-1RAs have not found significant benefit in reducing hospitalizations for HF.[21]

The New York Heart Association (NYHA) classifies HF in 4 stages based on exercise capacity and symptomatic status.[24] The stages of HF are as follows:

1. Class I: No symptoms and no limitation in ordinary physical activity, eg, no shortness of breath when walking, climbing stairs, etc.

2. Class II: Mild symptoms (mild shortness of breath and/or angina) and slight limitation during ordinary activity.
3. Class III: Marked limitation in activity due to symptoms, even during less-than-ordinary activity, eg, walking short distances (20–100 m). Comfortable only at rest.
4. Class IV: Severe limitations. Experiences symptoms even while at rest. Mostly bedbound patients.

Although the NYHA classification is based on subjective assessment, it is an independent predictor of mortality.

DIAGNOSIS

The history and physical examination remain the cornerstones of the clinical evaluation of HF, in addition to new biomarkers (eg, BNP) in patients with unclear shortness of breath.[8] A key objective of the diagnostic evaluation is to stratify the patient's CV risk so as to guide therapeutic decision making. The difficulty in patients with diabetes is the inherent risk of ischemic heart disease. Patients also often have metabolic syndrome features with hypertension.

Patients with HF*p*EF classically present with shortness of breath and a hypertension history. Certainly, they also can present with other features such as electrocardiogram (ECG) findings indicating left ventricular hypertrophy, small stroke volume, and atrial enlargement. The echocardiogram frequently is reported to have findings compatible with diastolic dysfunction with normal ejection fraction. The BNP level can be elevated; however, in obese individuals it can be normal. Clinical evaluation with wet lungs, pretibial pitting edema, and distended neck veins can be helpful signs of HF.

Patients with HF*r*EF usually present with a history of ischemic heart disease, eg, MI or coronary artery bypass graft surgery. They also will have shortness of breath with edema and elevated BNP level. Moreover, many have a history of diabetes and hypertension, which increases their CV risks.

Laboratory evaluation includes complete blood count, urinalysis, serum electrolytes, blood urea nitrogen, serum creatinine, glucose, nonfasting lipids, liver function tests, and thyroid-stimulating hormone.[8] The N-terminal pro BNP (NT-proBNP) level is useful to establish prognosis and disease severity, particularly in people with obesity, because findings from the clinical evaluation may be equivocal. Also included in the initial evaluation are a 12-lead electrocardiogram, chest x-ray, and 2-dimensional echocardiograph with Doppler to assess heart size and function, pulmonary congestion, and to rule out other disorders. Noninvasive evaluation is warranted due to the high suspicion for obstructive coronary artery disease. Help from a cardiologist in directing the next best option is often important. Noninvasive imaging also can be considered to detect myocardial ischemia and viability in people presenting with new-onset HF who have known coronary heart disease and no angina.

CARDIOVASCULAR OUTCOME TRIALS

In 2008, the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) began requiring manufacturers of new medications for T2DM to conduct clinical trials to compare the CV safety of the new medication vs placebo as part of standard care.[25] This includes the dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitor, GLP-1RA, and SGLT-2i classes of medications. Since then, more than 20 CV outcome trials (CVOTs) have been completed, with nearly all demonstrating that the CV safety of each of these medications is noninferior to placebo as part of standard care. Noninferiority was assessed based on the composite outcome of CV death, nonfatal MI, and nonfatal stroke.

The methods and patient populations in the CVOTs varied; thus, comparing the results is not possible. All CVOTs investigated the use of the glucose-lowering medication in people who had had a CV event, ie, secondary prevention. Most CVOTs also included people who were at high CV risk, but who had not had a CV event, ie, primary prevention.

Beyond CV safety, several of these medications have shown a significant reduction in CV risk vs placebo. These medications are the GLP-1RAs dulaglutide, liraglutide, and semaglutide, and the SGLT-2is canagliflozin, dapagliflozin, and empagliflozin. Ertugliflozin showed noninferiority, but not superiority, compared with placebo for the composite of major CV events.[26] With respect to HF, the GLP-1RAs did not significantly reduce HF hospitalization.[27] In contrast, the SGLT-2is canagliflozin, dapagliflozin, empagliflozin, and ertugliflozin were associated with a reduction in HF hospitalization, although the trials were not designed to look at this outcome in all cases and in different populations.[26-35]

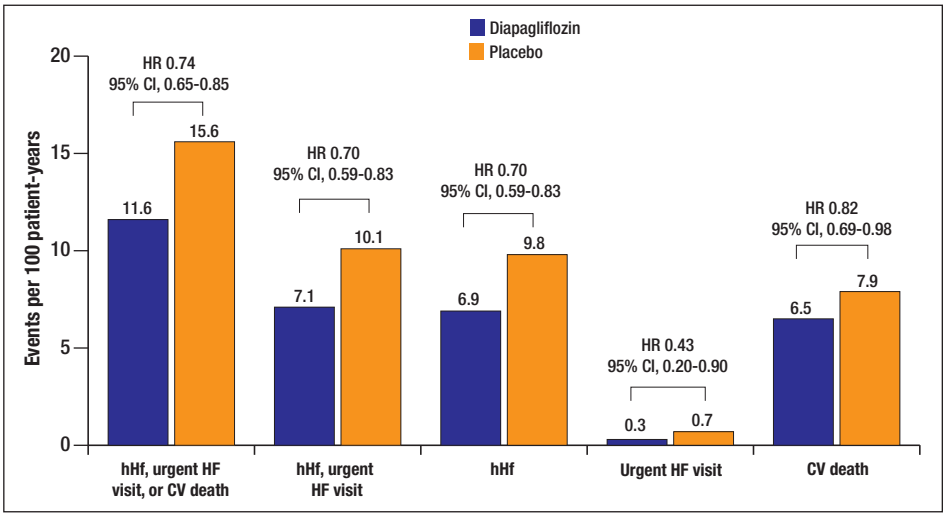
In patients with T2DM, the HF hospitalization benefit with canagliflozin was observed in those with a history of HF, but not in patients with no history of HF.[36] For dapagliflozin and empagliflozin, the HF hospitalization benefit was observed in patients with and without a history of HF.[37,38]

In these CVOTs involving an SGLT-2i in patients with T2DM, the proportion of people with established atherosclerotic CV disease (ASCVD) was 66% for canagliflozin, 41% for dapagliflozin, and 100% for empagliflozin. The proportion of people with a history of HF was 14.4% for canagliflozin, 10.0% for dapagliflozin, 10.1% for empagliflozin, and 23.7% for ertugliflozin, thus making it clear that only a small minority of people with T2DM in the SGLT-2i CVOTs had HF at baseline.

Dapagliflozin and Prevention of Adverse-Outcomes in Heart Failure (DAPA-HF) trial

The phase 3 DAPA-HF trial is the only CVOT that has prospectively evaluated the efficacy and safety of a glucose-lowering medication only in subjects meeting standard criteria for HF*r*EF, including elevated NT-proBNP.[39] All subjects received standard therapy for HF*r*EF. Forty-two percent of subjects in both the dapagliflozin and placebo groups had T2DM at baseline, all of whom received standard therapy for T2DM.

FIGURE 2. **Cardiovascular outcomes observed in the DAPA-HF trial**[40]



Abbreviations: CI, confidence interval; CV, cardiovascular; DAPA-HF, Dapagliflozin and Prevention of Adverse-Outcomes in Heart Failure; HF, heart failure; hHF, hospitalization for heart failure; HR, hazard ratio.

Subjects (N=4744) were randomized 1:1 to treatment with dapagliflozin or placebo. The primary outcome was a composite of CV death or hospitalization/urgent visit for HF resulting in the initiation of intravenous therapy. After a median of 18.2 months, the primary outcome occurred in 16.3% and 21.2% of dapagliflozin and placebo subjects, respectively (hazard ratio [HR] 0.74; 95% confidence interval [CI], 0.65-0.85; *P*<.001) (**FIGURE 2**).[40] Fewer subjects treated with dapagliflozin were hospitalized for HF (9.7% vs 13.4%, respectively; HR 0.70; 95% CI, 0.59-0.83) or had an urgent HF visit (0.4% vs 1.0%, respectively; HR 0.43; 95% CI, 0.20-0.90). Additionally, CV death occurred in 9.6% in the dapagliflozin group and 11.5% in the placebo group (HR 0.82; 95% CI, 0.69-0.98).

The effect of dapagliflozin on the primary outcome was generally consistent across prespecified subgroups, including subjects with or without diabetes at baseline. This latter finding not only suggests that the benefits of dapagliflozin in subjects with preexisting HF involve nonglycemic mechanisms, it has led some to recommend inclusion of dapagliflozin as standard therapy for patients with HF*r*EF regardless of diabetes history.[21,41] The trial also showed that subjects in NYHA functional class III or IV experienced less benefit than subjects in class II. The occurrence of a serious adverse event related to volume depletion or renal adverse event was similar in the dapagliflozin and placebo groups.

Significantly more subjects in the dapagliflozin group than in the placebo group experienced significant improvement in symptoms based on the Kansas City Cardiomyopathy Questionnaire.[40,42] Similarly, significantly fewer subjects in the dapagliflozin group experienced significant symptom deterioration.

Additional analyses of DAPA-HF have shown improved outcomes with dapagliflozin vs placebo across various subgroups. Age group (<55, 55–64, 65–74, and ≥75 years) had no significant effect on the rate of the primary outcome, adverse events, or study drug discontinuation.[43] Another analysis found that the benefit of dapagliflozin over placebo on the primary outcome was consistent regardless of background guideline-recommended pharmacotherapy or device therapy for HF*r*EF,[44] thus suggesting that the effects of dapagliflozin are incremental and complementary to conventional therapies for HF*r*EF.[45] Further analysis showed a similar reduction in the risk of the primary composite endpoint with dapagliflozin in subjects treated with a neprilysin inhibitor, ie, sacubitril/valsartan, or not treated with a neprilysin inhibitor.[40] Finally, significantly fewer patients without T2DM at baseline developed T2DM on trial. Subjects in whom T2DM developed generally had a higher mean baseline A1C, body mass index, and lower estimated glomerular filtration rate.[46]

Ongoing CVOTs

Additional clinical trials involving SGLT-2i therapy in people with HF are underway. In people with HF*r*EF, these include the DETERMINE-Reduced (NCT03877237) with dapagliflozin and EMPEROR-Reduced (NCT03057977) with empagliflozin. In people with HF*p*EF, these include the DETERMINE-Preserved (NCT03877224) and DELIVER (NCT03619213) trials with dapagliflozin and EMPEROR-Preserved (NCT03057951) with empagliflozin.

Implications for patient care

The results of the CVOTs have reshaped recommendations regarding the treatment of people with HF and T2DM. For secondary prevention, the American Diabetes Association *Standards of Medical Care in Diabetes–2020* recommends an SGLT-2i in people with T2DM and HF who do not achieve adequate glycemic control with the combination of lifestyle management plus metformin.[22] Among the SGLT-2i agents, dapagliflozin is preferred based on the results of the DAPA-HF trial. The American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists/American College of Endocrinology provides similar recommendations.[23]

For the treatment of patients with T2DM for primary prevention, the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association recommends considering an SGLT-2i or a GLP-1RA in people with T2DM and additional ASCVD risk factors who do not achieve glycemic control with the combination of lifestyle management plus metformin.[47]

Finally, the product labeling approved by the FDA reflects key results from CVOTs.[48-51] Of the 4 SGLT-2i agents, the labeling for canagliflozin reflects a benefit in reducing the risk of hospitalization for HF in patients with T2DM and chronic kidney disease, while the benefit with dapagliflozin is in patients with T2DM and established CV disease or multiple CV risk factors. Dapagliflozin is also indicated to reduce the risk of CV death and hospitalization for HF in adults with HF*r*EF (NYHA class II-IV).

BOTTOM LINE

Several points are key regarding the management of people with T2DM. First, HF, as well as ASCVD, is common in people with T2DM. For people with T2DM, treatment is shifting beyond a glucocentric focus to include CV risk reduction. Therefore, it is critical that glycemia, CV disease, and other risk factors be managed as recommended in evolving guidelines and consistent with FDA-approved labeling. Because guidelines and product labeling are rapidly changing to reflect data from clinical trials, it is important to check this information frequently. Finally, while the benefits of lifestyle management are established, the pharmacotherapeutic management with SGLT-2is in patients with HF with or without T2DM is a rapidly evolving field. Therefore, it is important to educate and support people with T2DM – in fact, all people – to adopt and maintain a healthy lifestyle with normal body weight, good nutrition, and daily physical activity. ●

REFERENCES

1. Mamas MA, Sperrin M, Watson MC, et al. Do patients have worse outcomes in heart failure than in cancer? A primary care-based cohort study with 10-year follow-up in Scotland. *Eur J Heart Fail.* 2017;19(9):1095-1104.
2. Jackson SL, Tong X, King RJ, Loustalot F, Hong Y, Ritchey MD. National burden of heart failure events in the United States, 2006 to 2014. *Circ Heart Fail.* 2018;11(12):e004873.
3. Virani SS, Alonso A, Benjamin EJ, et al. Heart disease and stroke statistics-2020 update: a report from the American Heart Association. *Circulation.* 2020;141(9):e139-e596.
4. Ward ZJ, Bleich SN, Cradock AL, et al. Projected U.S. state-level prevalence of adult obesity and severe obesity. *N Engl J Med.* 2019;381(25):2440-2450.
5. Chamberlain AM, Boyd CM, Manemann SM, et al. Risk factors for heart failure in the community: Differences by age and ejection fraction. *Am J Med.* 2020;133(6):e237-e248.
6. Dunlay SM, Weston SA, Jacobsen SJ, Roger VL. Risk factors for heart failure: a population-based case-control study. *Am J Med.* 2009;122(11):1023-1028.
7. Thomas MC. Type 2 diabetes and heart failure: Challenges and solutions. *Curr Cardiol Rev.* 2016;12(3):249-255.
8. Yancy CW, Jessup M, Bozkurt B, et al. 2013 ACCF/AHA guideline for the management of heart failure: a report of the American College of Cardiology Foundation/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2013;62(16):e147-239.
9. Kannel WB, Hjortland M, Castelli WP. Role of diabetes in congestive heart failure: the Framingham study. *Am J Cardiol.* 1974;34(1):29-34.
10. Thrainsdottir IS, Aspelund T, Thorgeirsson G, et al. The association between glucose abnormalities and heart failure in the population-based Reykjavik study. *Diabetes Care.* 2005;28(3):612-616.
11. Dei Cas A, Khan SS, Butler J, et al. Impact of diabetes on epidemiology, treatment, and outcomes of patients with heart failure. *JACC Heart Fail.* 2015;3(2):136-145.
12. Komanduri S, Jadhao Y, Guduru SS, Cheriyath P, Wert Y. Prevalence and risk factors of heart failure in the USA: NHANES 2013 - 2014 epidemiological follow-up study. *J Community Hosp Intern Med Perspect.* 2017;7(1):15-20.
13. Duckworth W, Abraira C, Moritz T, et al. Glucose control and vascular complications in veterans with type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2009;360(2):129-139.
14. Patel A, MacMahon S, Chalmers J, et al. Intensive blood glucose control and vascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2008;358(24):2560-2572.
15. Gerstein HC, Miller ME, Byington RP, et al. Effects of intensive glucose lowering in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2008;358(24):2545-2559.
16. United Kingdom Prospective Diabetes Study. Intensive blood-glucose control with sulphonylureas or insulin compared with conventional treatment and risk of complications in patients with type 2 diabetes (UKPDS 33). UK Prospective Diabetes Study (UKPDS) Group. *Lancet.* 1998;352(9131):837-853.
17. Ditah CM, Rahman E, Agbor VN, et al. Disparities and drivers of early age at diagnosis of congestive heart failure in the USA. *Int J Cardiol.* 2019;293:143-147.
18. Faden G, Faganello G, De Feo S, et al. The increasing detection of asymptomatic left ventricular dysfunction in patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus without overt cardiac disease: data from the SHORTWAVE study. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract.* 2013;101(3):309-316.
19. Owan TE, Hodge DO, Herges RM, Jacobsen SJ, Roger VL, Redfield MM. Trends in prevalence and outcome of heart failure with preserved ejection fraction. *N Engl J Med.* 2006;355(3):251-259.
20. Owan TE, Redfield MM. Epidemiology of diastolic heart failure. *Prog Cardiovasc Dis.* 2005;47(5):320-332.
21. Packer M. Lessons learned from the DAPA-HF trial concerning the mechanisms of benefit of SGLT2 inhibitors on heart failure events in the context of other large-scale trials nearing completion. *Cardiovasc Diabetol.* 2019;18(1):129.
22. American Diabetes Association. 9. Pharmacologic approaches to glycemic treatment: standards of medical care in diabetes-2020. *Diabetes Care.* 2020;43(Suppl 1):S98-S110.
23. Garber AJ, Handelsman Y, Grunberger G, et al. Consensus statement by the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists and American College of Endocrinology on the comprehensive type 2 diabetes management algorithm - 2020 executive summary. *Endocr Pract.* 2020;26(1):107-139.
24. Madsen BK, Hansen JF, Stokholm KH, Brons J, Husum D, Mortensen LS. Chronic congestive heart failure. Description and survival of 190 consecutive patients with a diagnosis of chronic congestive heart failure based on clinical signs and symptoms. *Eur Heart J.* 1994;15(3):303-310.
25. US Food and Drug Administration. Guidance for Industry. Diabetes Mellitus- Evaluating cardiovascular risk in new antidiabetic therapies to treat type 2 diabetes.. Published 2008. https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guiddances/ucm071627.pdf. Accessed February 6, 2018.
26. Caffrey M. VERTIS CV: Ertugliflozin falls short of SGLT2s on CV outcomes, despite promise in heart failure. Published June 16, 2020. https://www.ajmc.com/conferences/ada-2020/vertis-cv-ertugliflozin-falls-short-of-sglt2s-on-cv-outcomes-despite-promise-in-heart-failure. Accessed June 16, 2020.
27. Zelniker TA, Wiviott SD, Raz I, et al. Comparison of the effects of glucagon-like peptide receptor agonists and sodium-glucose cotransporter 2 inhibitors for prevention of major adverse cardiovascular and renal outcomes in type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Circulation.* 2019;139(17):2022-2031.
28. Zelniker TA, Wiviott SD, Raz I, et al. SGLT2 inhibitors for primary and secondary prevention of cardiovascular and renal outcomes in type 2 diabetes: a systematic review and meta-analysis of cardiovascular outcome trials. *Lancet.* 2019;393(10166):31-39.
29. Gerstein HC, Colhoun HM, Dagenais GR, et al. Dulaglutide and cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes (REWIND): a double-blind, randomised placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet.* 2019;394(10193):121-130.
30. Marso SP, Daniels GH, Brown-Frandsen K, et al. Liraglutide and cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2016;375(4):311-322.
31. Marso SP, Bain SC, Consoli A, et al. Semaglutide and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2016;375(19):1834-1844.
32. Husain M, Birkenfeld AL, Donsmark M, et al. Oral semaglutide and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2019;381(9):841-851.
33. Neal B, Perkovic V, Mahaffey KW, et al. Canagliflozin and cardiovascular and renal events in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2017;377(7):644-657.
34. Wiviott SD, Raz I, Bonaca MP, et al. Dapagliflozin and cardiovascular outcomes in type

2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2019;380(4):347-357.
35. Zinman B, Wanner C, Lachin JM, et al. Empagliflozin, cardiovascular outcomes, and mortality in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2015;373(22):2117-2128.
36. Radholm K, Figtree G, Perkovic V, et al. Canagliflozin and heart failure in type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Circulation.* 2018;138(5):458-468.
37. Kato ET, Silverman MG, Mosenzon O, et al. Effect of dapagliflozin on heart failure and mortality in type 2 diabetes mellitus. *Circulation.* 2019;139(22):2528-2536.
38. Fitchett D, Zinman B, Wanner C, et al. Heart failure outcomes with empagliflozin in patients with type 2 diabetes at high cardiovascular risk: results of the EMPA-REG OUTCOME(R) trial. *Eur Heart J.* 2016;37(19):1526-1534.
39. McMurray JJV, DeMets DL, Inzucchi SE, et al. A trial to evaluate the effect of the sodium-glucose co-transporter 2 inhibitor dapagliflozin on morbidity and mortality in patients with heart failure and reduced left ventricular ejection fraction (DAPA-HF). *Eur J Heart Fail.* 2019;21(5):665-675.
40. McMurray JJV, Solomon SD, Inzucchi SE, et al. Dapagliflozin in patients with heart failure and reduced ejection fraction. *N Engl J Med.* 2019;381(21):1995-2008.
41. McMurray JJV, Solomon SD, Docherty KF, Jhund PS. The Dapagliflozin and prevention of adverse outcomes in heart failure trial (DAPA-HF) in context. *Eur Heart J.* 2020;doi:10.1093/eurheartj/ehz916.
42. Kosiborod MN, Jhund P, Docherty KF, et al. Effects of dapagliflozin on symptoms, function and quality of life in patients with heart failure and reduced ejection fraction: results from the DAPA-HF trial. *Circulation.* 2019;141(2):90-99.
43. Martinez FA, Serenelli M, Nicolau JC, et al. Efficacy and safety of dapagliflozin in heart failure with reduced ejection fraction according to age: insights from DAPA-HF. *Circulation.* 2020;141(2):100-111.
44. Yancy CW, Januzzi JL, Jr., Allen LA, et al. 2017 ACC Expert consensus decision pathway for optimization of heart failure treatment: Answers to 10 pivotal issues about heart failure with reduced ejection fraction: A report of the American College of Cardiology task force on expert consensus decision pathways. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2018;71(2):201-230.
45. Docherty KF, Jhund PS, Inzucchi SE, et al. Effects of dapagliflozin in DAPA-HF according to background heart failure therapy. *Eur Heart J.* 2020;doi:10.1093/eurheartj/ehaa183.
46. Inzucchi SE, Docherty K, Kober L, et al. Effect of dapagliflozin on the incidence of diabetes: A prespecified exploratory analysis from DAPA-HF. Abstract 271-OR. American Diabetes Association 80th Annual Scientific Sessions, June 12-16, 2020.
47. Arnett DK, Blumenthal RS, Albert MA, et al. 2019 ACC/AHA Guideline on the Primary Prevention of Cardiovascular Disease. *Circulation.* 2019;140(11):e596-e646.
48. Invokana [package insert]. Titusville, NJ: Janssen Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; January 2020.
49. Farxiga [package insert]. Wilmington, DE: AstraZeneca Pharmaceuticals LP; February 2020.
50. Jardiance [package insert]. Ridgefield, CT: Boehringer Ingelheim Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; January 2020.
51. Steglatro [package insert]. Whitehouse Station, NJ: Merck Sharp & Dohme Corp.; January 2020.

Efficacy and Safety of Naproxen for Acute Pain

Steven M. Weisman, PhD; Stephen Brunton, MD, FAAFP

ABSTRACT

Acute pain often is treated with over-the-counter (OTC) therapeutics, including non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs). However, not all NSAIDs are equally effective for treating different types of acute pain. In this article, we review the data supporting the use of OTC naproxen to effectively treat a variety of types of acute pain, including dysmenorrhea, headache, and dental pain, as well as review adverse effects. This information can be used to provide appropriate treatment for patients experiencing acute pain and help prevent progression to chronic pain.

ACUTE PAIN

Acute pain refers to pain that has been present for less than 3 to 6 months. Acute pain is a non-chronic symptom associated with surgery, trauma, or acute illness that ends when the underlying condition resolves.[1] Acute pain often can be managed with OTC pain medications. A US health statistics survey of adults reported that a substantial percentage of the adult population experiences conditions associated with acute pain. During a 3-month period, 29% of survey respondents reported that they experienced low back pain, 17% experienced a migraine or severe headache, 15% experienced neck pain, and 5% experienced facial or jaw pain.[2] NSAIDs are very effective for low back pain, migraine, neck pain, and facial or jaw pain.[3] Several other types of acute pain and discomfort, including dysmenorrhea, common cold symptoms, and acute musculoskeletal conditions, also can be managed with NSAIDs.[4,5] For these acute pain conditions, OTC NSAIDs generally are preferred over opioids, which have a significant risk of dependency or addiction, dose-dependent constipation, and respiratory depression.

Prompt non-prescription management of acute pain has been shown to prevent development of chronic pain.[6-10] Acute pain that transitions to chronic pain can lead to unhealthy behaviors, including alcohol and drug abuse, overeating, and opioid use or abuse.[11-13] Similarly, inadequate management of post-operative pain is associated with higher rates of morbidity and mortality and is a risk factor for transitioning to chronic pain.[6-8,14]

Acute Pain Progressing to Chronic Pain

Acute pain that has transitioned to chronic pain can impact mortality and creates a social and economic burden.[15] The etiology of the transition has been hypothesized to be related to the direct injury of cutaneous nerves. Peripheral nerve injury can be accompanied by structural changes, such as alterations in the electrochemical gradient and action potential, and physiological adaptations to these changes such as new expression of sodium channels, which creates a hypersensitized state. Tissue damage, especially from surgery, triggers a cascade of physiologic adaptions in response to the increased risk of infection: inflammation, immune activation, and chemokines to promote healing and protect the area from further injury.[16] Because stimulus from these hypersensitized nociceptors is constantly being transmitted to central nerves, it is thought that this primary hyperalgesia results in secondary hypersensitization when the peripheral pain is persistent.[17] The hypothesis that the central nervous system plays an important role in chronic pain is supported by experimental studies. A study of rats found that acute pain after spinal nerve ligation did not progress to chronic pain when specific central nerves were blocked.[16] In humans, this concept has led to the practice of preventative analgesia, where preoperative analgesia is used to avoid the transition from acute to chronic pain. A randomized controlled trial demonstrated

Steven M. Weisman, PhD
Innovative Science Solutions, Inc., Morristown, NJ, USA

Stephen Brunton, MD, FAAFP
Adjunct Associate Professor, Touro University California, College of Osteopathic Medicine, Vallejo, CA, USA; Executive Vice President for Education, Primary Care Education Consortium, Murrieta, CA, USA

CONFLICT OF INTEREST:
Dr. Weisman is Head of Clinical and Regulatory Support at Innovative Science Solutions, a consultancy to the pharmaceutical industry, and has received consultancy fees from Bayer related to the topic of this manuscript. Dr. Brunton has no conflicts to report.

FUNDING:
The authors disclosed receipt of the following financial support for the research, authorship, and/or publication of this article: funding was provided by Bayer.

that, although analgesia given before thoracic surgery did not result in a significant difference in acute pain over the 7-day post-surgical period compared with post-surgical analgesia, the technique did result in a significant reduction in pain after 3 (P =.035) and 6 (P =.0086) months.[19] A similar finding was observed in a study that showed intraoperative analgesia in colon resection did not result in significantly improved pain at the 2-week follow-up compared with post-operative analgesia, but a significant improvement was found 1 year after treatment.[20] Although the current evidence is not conclusive of the proposed mechanism, it provides some basis to support effective management of acute pain.

NAPROXEN

History

Following the US introduction of ibuprofen as an alternative to steroids for treating rheumatoid arthritis,[21] naproxen (free acid) was introduced a year later with additional data supporting its use for managing ankylosing spondylitis and acute gout.[22] Later data supported the drug for managing primary dysmenorrhea, bursitis, osteoarthritis, generalized pain, and more.[23]

Further advances led to development of a new formulation of naproxen. Naproxen is a weak acid (pKa=4.15) with pharmacokinetics that limit the rate of absorption in the highly acidic environment of the gastrointestinal (GI) tract; adding an alkali salt improves absorption. Naproxen sodium formulation has been shown to reach peak therapeutic index more rapidly than naproxen (P<.01), had a significantly higher concentration in the first 2 hours (P<.01),[24] and was FDA-approved in 1981.[25]

Naproxen sodium remained a prescription-only drug in the United States until the FDA approved an OTC dose and duration in 1994, supported by safety and efficacy evidence for self-management.

Efficacy

Indications

Naproxen free acid and naproxen sodium are FDA-approved at prescription doses for treating rheumatoid arthritis, osteoarthritis, ankylosing spondylitis (500 to 550 mg/d, up to 1500 mg/d), polyarticular juvenile idiopathic arthritis (10 mg/kg in 2 divided doses), bursitis, tendonitis, pain, primary dysmenorrhea (starting dose of 550 mg then 550 mg every 12 hours or 275 mg every 6 to 8 hours as required; the initial daily dose should not exceed 1375 mg; thereafter, the daily dose should not exceed 1100 mg), and acute gout (starting dose 750/825 mg then 250/275 mg every 8 hours until the attack has subsided). As an OTC product available in the United States, naproxen sodium is available at single doses of 220 to 440 mg (loading dose) with a maximum daily dose of 660 mg and a dosing frequency of 8 to 12 hours.[26] OTC dosing regimens and maximum daily doses vary in countries outside the United States.[27] Naproxen sodium is indicated for minor aches and pains due to arthritis, muscular aches, backache, menstrual cramps, headache, toothache, and the common cold, as well as the temporary reduction of fever.[23] Naproxen sodium provides a faster onset of action compared with the base naproxen (free acid) form, making it more suitable for treating acute pain. Clinical practice guidelines recommend naproxen as first-line treatment for a number of acute pain conditions, including dysmenorrhea and headache (**TABLE**).[28-39]

DYSMENORRHEA

Primary dysmenorrhea refers to painful menstrual cramps without underlying pathology. Nonprescription doses of naproxen have been evaluated for the treatment of this condition, which is estimated to affect more than 50% of women.[40] NSAIDs, including naproxen, dosed before and during menses, are recommended by clinical guidelines as a first-line treatment for primary dysmenorrhea.[41] A Cochrane review found that naproxen, 250 mg to 275 mg (sometimes with a loading dose of 500 mg to 550 mg), was more effective for relieving pain associated with dysmenorrhea compared with placebo and was associated with a small increase in adverse effects.[42] A recent crossover trial compared single doses of naproxen sodium, 440 mg, and acetaminophen, 1000 mg, for treating pain associated with primary dysmenorrhea (N = 189; per-protocol assessment). Participants were randomized to either therapy—1 dose for 12 hours, then switched to the other therapy—and were evaluted for total pain relief and pain intensity differences over a 12-hour period. Individuals taking the naproxen sodium regimen reported better total pain relief during therapy (difference of least squares means: 4.31; 95% confidence interval [CI]: 2.06 to 6.56; P <.001) and summed pain intensity difference during 6 to 12 hours (difference of least squares means: 8.27, 95% CI: 5.76 to 10.78, P <.001).[43]

POST-DENTAL SURGERY PAIN

Dental pain (toothache) is a manifestation of a number of acute facial conditions including dental caries, soft tissue disease, and post-surgical pain.[44] The American Dental Association recommends NSAIDs as first-line therapy for acute dental pain.[45] Post-surgical pain is a frequently used model for measuring analgesic efficacy for toothache because of the high predictability for symptom onset.

A systematic review of the literature found that NSAIDs were significantly more effective than placebo for relieving pain after endodontic treatment. This review included

an indirect comparison of ibuprofen and naproxen, which found that naproxen was more effective for relieving pain than ibuprofen, although the data did not reach significance (*P*=.052). The authors concluded that there is insufficient evidence to recommend a specific NSAID regimen, but stated that naproxen might be more effective than ibuprofen for acute endodontic pain.[46] Naproxen demonstrated efficacy for treating dental pain after third molar extraction evaluated in previous previously published studies.[47,48]

A 2019 randomized trial compared maximum single OTC doses of 440 mg naproxen sodium, 400 mg ibuprofen, and placebo for total and summed pain intensity difference over a 24-hour period (N = 385; per-protocol assessment). Total pain relief over 24 hours and pain intensity differences over 12 hours were significantly better with naproxen compared with ibuprofen or placebo (*P* <.05 for all comparisons). The time to rescue medication was significantly improved (*P*<.001) with naproxen compared with ibuprofen and placebo, and the number of individuals in the naproxen group requiring rescue medication (34.9%) was significantly lower than the ibuprofen (83.0%) and placebo groups (81.5%). Additionally, significant differences in pain intensity favoring naproxen manifested between 4 and 6 hours, which is earlier than the recommended re-dosing time for acetaminophen, underscoring the benefit of naproxen's longer duration of action.[49]

MUSCLE ACHES

Myalgia is pain originating from the muscles. Lower back pain is a common manifestation of myalgia and acute exacerbations can be managed with NSAIDs. Short-term treatment with naproxen and other NSAIDs is supported by several guideline recommendations. The American Academy of Family Physicians guidelines conclude that naproxen and other NSAIDs are more effective than placebo in the short-term treatment of non-specific chronic low back pain (evidence rating A2). These guidelines do not distinguish between NSAIDs, but do not recommend acetaminophen.[28] The American College of Physicians and the Pain Society Joint Clinical Practice Guidelines strongly recommend either an NSAID or acetaminophen as first-line treatment options for acute, subacute, or chronic treatment if baseline severity and risks are properly assessed.[29]

HEADACHE

NSAIDs are recommended for treating acute headaches and exacerbations of migraines. The American Headache Society and American Academy of Neurology concluded in their clinical practice guidelines that naproxen has established efficacy for acute migraine treatment.[50] These guidelines recommend naproxen as a nonprescription oral analgesic for acute migraine treatment in adults and children.

Naproxen is recommended as an adjunct to the serotonin agonist sumatriptan for acute relief when a migraine is unresponsive or only partially responsive to a triptan alone. The authors concluded with a high level of confidence that the combination of sumatriptan and naproxen effectively relieves pain 2 hours after treatment. At doses ranging from 60 to 500 mg, naproxen in combination with sumatriptan 10 to 85 mg was significantly better than placebo with an efficacy ratio ranging from 2.17 to 2.95 and statistically significant at all dosages. Additionally, the combination of naproxen and sumatriptan effectively relieved migraine symptoms of photophobia and phonophobia at 2 hours.[50]

Naproxen, 250 mg twice daily for 6 weeks, was tested for efficacy in individuals experiencing migraine headaches. The 28 participants taking naproxen experienced a reduced number of migraine attacks (1.0 ± 0.17 per week for naproxen compared with 1.3 ± 0.18 placebo, *P*<.03). Migraine index (frequency times severity) also was significantly reduced with naproxen (3.0 ± 0.51 for naproxen compared with 4.1 ± 0.50 placebo, *P*<0.01).[51]

Data on the efficacy of naproxen for headache are further supported at prescription dosages. A comprehensive literature review of placebo-controlled trials of naproxen aimed to evaluate the efficacy of different dosages of naproxen for treating acute headache of moderate to severe intensity. The pooled analysis only involved prescription dosages (500 and 825 mg) but found naproxen was significantly more effective than placebo in relieving headache (relative risk [RR]: 1.58; 95% CI: 1.41 to 1.77; *P*<.00001) and achieving complete pain relief at 2 hours (RR: 2.22; 95% CI: 1.46 to 3.36; *P*=.0002). Additionally, naproxen showed increased sustained relief of headache, nausea, and photophobia over a 24-hour period.[52]

THE COMMON COLD

Prostaglandins may be among the inflammatory mediators that play a role in the pathogenesis of symptoms of rhinovirus colds. Similar to all NSAIDs, naproxen inhibits cyclooxygenase (COX) resulting in decreased prostaglandin synthesis. Naproxen does not alter virus shedding or serum neutralizing antibody responses in rhinovirus colds but relieves symptoms of headache, malaise, myalgia, and cough.[53] A systematic review evaluated controlled trials of the efficacy of NSAIDs in relieving pain associated with the cold. Although neither duration nor respiratory symptoms were improved, outcomes relating to pain and sneezing were significantly reduced with NSAID treatment. For naproxen, daily sneezing scores were significantly reduced during days 1 and 4 of therapy. The score of headache associated with cold was sig-

TABLE. **Summary of Clinical Practice Guidelines and Recommendations of Naproxen**

Guideline Name	Recommendation
General Pain Management	
HHS Pain Management-Best Practices 2019[30]	For non-neuropathic, non-cancer pain, use NSAIDs and acetaminophen as first-line medications.
Arthritis	
ACR 2012 Recommendations for the Use of Nonpharmacologic and Pharmacologic Therapies in OA of the Hand, Hip, and Knee[31]	Oral NSAIDs are recommended (based on patient preference) as first-line pharmacologic management of knee, hand, and hip OA.
AAFP 2012: Osteoarthritis: Diagnosis and Treatment[32]	NSAIDs are superior to acetaminophen for treating moderate-to-severe OA. (Evidence rating A)
AAOS 2013 Evidence-Based Guideline for Treatment of OA of the Knee (2nd Edition)[33]	Oral or topical NSAIDs should be used with symptomatic knee OA (Recommendation strength: strong).
OARSI 2014 Guidelines for the Non-Surgical Management of Knee Osteoarthritis[34]	Oral non-selective NSAIDs are recommended as a first-line pharmacologic therapy for knee only OA or for multi-joint OA in individuals without comorbidities. (Quality of evidence: good)
Low Back Pain	
AAFP 2018 Recommendations for Mechanical Low Back Pain[28]	Use short-term NSAIDs in non-specific chronic low back pain. (Evidence rating: A) No difference among types of NSAIDs.
American College of Physicians and American Pain Society Joint 2001 Guidelines for Low Back Pain[29]	NSAIDs are recommended as first-line therapy for acute, sub-acute, or chronic treatment for most low back pain.
Migraine	
American Headache Society 2019 Consensus Statement[35]	For acute treatment of migraines, use NSAIDs, or non-opioid analgesics for mild-to-moderate attacks. (Established efficacy)
AAFP 2019 Acute Migraine Headache: Treatment Strategies[36]	NSAIDs are first-line treatment for mild-to-moderate migraine. (Evidence rating A) Strong evidence supports the use of oral acetaminophen, aspirin, diclofenac, ibuprofen, or naproxen for mild-to-moderate migraine attacks.
Dysmenorrhea	
AAFP Guidelines 2014: Diagnosis and Initial Management of Dysmenorrhea[37]	NSAIDs should be used as first-line treatment for primary dysmenorrhea. (Evidence rating A)
ACOG 2018 Opinion on Dysmenorrhea and Endometriosis in the Adolescent[38]	Most adolescents with dysmenorrhea will respond to empiric treatment with NSAIDs, hormonal suppression, or both. NSAIDs are a first-line treatment option.
Dental Pain	
ADA 2019 Oral Health Topics: Oral Analgesics for Acute Dental Pain[39]	NSAIDs are more effective than opioid analgesics; recommended as first-line therapy for acute pain management.

Abbreviations: AAFP, American Academy of Family Physicians; AAOS, American Academy of Orthopedic Surgeons; ACOG, American College of Obstetricians and Gynecologists; ACR, American College of Rheumatology; ADA, American Dental Association; HHS, Department of Health and Human Services; NSAIDs, Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs; OA, osteoarthritis; OARSI, Osteoarthritis Research Society International.

nificantly lower in the NSAID groups compared with the placebo groups (mean difference: –0.65; 95% CI: –1.11 to –0.19). Myalgia score also was significantly reduced with naproxen use and NSAIDs overall significantly reduced pain in both myalgia and joint pain (mean difference: –0.40; 95% CI: –0.77 to –0.03).[54]

SAFETY

General

Naproxen generally is well tolerated and safe at OTC dosages and durations indicated for use without physician monitoring. However, the mechanism of action of NSAIDs has a known link to GI, cardiac, and renal adverse effects.

Naproxen, similar to other NSAIDs, is a non-specific inhibitor of COX, an enzyme that is a required catalyst for the conversion of arachidonic acid from plasma membranes into prostaglandins, a family of hormone-like molecules that mediate inflammatory responses.[55] There are 2 COX isoforms, COX-1 and COX-2, that exist as homodimers. COX-1 inhibition could reduce prostaglandin synthesis, but also has the effect of promoting gastric protection. Inhibition of COX-1 can lead to GI issues such as bleeding or ulcers. COX-2 inhibition also reduces prostaglandin synthesis but prevents the kidney from performing homeostatic functions related to water retention, leading to blood pressure and kidney injury concerns. Traditional NSAIDs are nonspecific and do not

highly favor one isoform over the other. This could lead to GI, cardiac, or renal adverse effects, although with a lesser incidence or severity compared with an inhibitor of a specific COX isoform.[56]

In 2004 the FDA raised concerns about potential cardiovascular adverse effects with NSAIDs after the selective COX-2 inhibitor rofecoxib was withdrawn from the market. COX-2 specific inhibitors had demonstrated a significant elevation in cardiovascular risk, and there was concern that this risk would be present with NSAID use. Advisory committees convened in 2005 and 2014 noted that there is a lower cardiovascular risk profile for naproxen compared with ibuprofen, a risk that is further lowered at low dosages or shorter durations of use. However, the committee concluded that NSAIDs as a class are associated with an elevated cardiovascular risk, and the FDA required a label warning for all NSAIDs and did not make an exception for naproxen.[57]

Recently, joint recommendations from the Asian Pacific Association of Gastroenterology, Asia Pacific League of Associations for Rheumatology, Asia-Pacific Society for Digestive Endoscopy, Asia Pacific Society of Hypertension, Asian Pacific Society of Nephrology, and Pulse of Asia on the use of NSAIDs in patients with hypertension, cardiovascular, renal, or GI comorbidities includes naproxen as one of the preferred drugs for patients with high cardiovascular risk if NSAID treatment cannot be avoided.[58]

Cardiac and Renal

COX-2 inhibition can lead to cardiac and renal adverse effects with elevated concern for patients with underlying cardiovascular (CV) or renal disease. Because of the wide overlapping prevalence of OTC NSAID use and cardiovascular/renal disease, many large cohort studies have been conducted to understand if there is an association between NSAID use and cardiovascular or renal events. A 2018 review article by White et al[56] summarized these studies. In general, increased dosage and duration of NSAID therapy was associated with an increased risk of cardiovascular and renal events across observational studies. Many trials noted that, although prescription doses generally were safe in the absence of underlying cardiac and renal conditions, cardiovascular events were significantly reduced with OTC dosages and durations compared with prescription regimens. For example, an observational study with more than a million patients found that prescription dosages of ibuprofen were associated with an increased risk of major CV events (RR: 1.78; 95% CI: 1.35 to 2.34), while OTC use was not (RR: 1.05; 95% CI: 0.96 to 1.15). Although prescription naproxen use was not associated with an increased risk of major CV events (RR: 1.05; 95% CI: 0.89 to 1.24), the risk was numerically lower with non-prescription dosages (RR: 0.97; 95% CI: 0.87 to 1.08).[46] Although these studies provide substantial evidence to suggest the cardiac and renal safety of OTC naproxen, they are susceptible to confounding factors inherent to all observational trials. Recently, the PRECISION randomized controlled trial concluded that prescription doses of naproxen were not associated with a significantly increased risk of major adverse cardiac events compared with celecoxib (Hazard ratio [HR]: 0.97; 95% CI: 0.83 to 1.12, *P*=.64). However, prescription dosages of ibuprofen were associated with a significantly increased risk of major cardiac events compared with naproxen (HR: 1.39; 95% CI: 1.01 to 1.91; *P*=.04).[59]

GASTROINTESTINAL

COX-1 inhibition can lead to GI adverse effects. In a large meta-analysis (N=48,706) prescription naproxen 500 mg twice daily was associated with a significantly increased risk of upper GI events compared with placebo (RR: 4.22, 95% CI: 2.71 to 6.56).[60] OTC naproxen also is associated with elevations in mild GI adverse effects (constipation, diarrhea, dyspepsia, and nausea) but, in contrast with prescription dosages, the elevation is not significantly or clinically different. In a pooled analysis of naproxen studies with OTC dosages (N=7282), GI adverse events were elevated with naproxen (11.6%) vs placebo (9.5%), but the difference was not significant.[61] Also, ibuprofen and acetaminophen at non-prescription dosages in multiple-dose, multi-day (7 to 10 days) duration clinical trials did not show increased risk of adverse events compared with placebo or other OTC analgesics.[62] Similar to cardiovascular risk, evidence suggests that the risk of GI complications is minimized when naproxen is used at OTC dosages and durations.

CONCLUSIONS

Naproxen is an effective medication recommended for first-line use in many types of pain, particularly dysmenorrhea, headache, toothache, and acute musculoskeletal conditions such as back and neck pain. Efficacy is supported by randomized controlled trials, and secondary measures such as use of rescue opioids or the time to complete resolution of pain were significantly improved. Many clinical guidelines recommend naproxen use to achieve a clinical benefit and prevent development of chronic pain. Safety concerns include GI, renal, or cardiovascular risk primarily at prescription dosages and durations. At OTC dosages, the risk may be elevated, but does not reach statistical significance in many large cohort studies, even in participants with elevated baseline risk. Patients should consult their physicians regarding the use of naproxen for self-medicating their acute pain or discomfort.

REFERENCES

1. National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine; Health and Medicine Division; Board on Health Sciences Policy; Committee on Pain Management and Regulatory Strategies to Address Prescription Opioid Abuse; Phillips JK, Ford MA, Bonnie RJ. Pain management and the opioid epidemic: balancing societal and individual benefits and risks of prescription opioid use. *National Academies of Sciences, Engineering, and Medicine; Health and Medicine Division; Board on Health Sciences Policy; Committee on Pain Management and Regulatory Strategies to Address Prescription Opioid Abuse.* Washington, DC: 2017.
2. Schiller JS, Lucas JW, Ward BW, Peregoy JA. Summary health statistics for U.S. adults: National Health Interview Survey, 2010. *Vital Health Stat 10.* 2012;252:1-207.
3. Hersh EV, Moore PA, Ross GL. Over-the-counter analgesics and antipyretics: a critical assessment. *Clin Ther.* 2000;22(5):500-548.
4. Brooks P. Use and benefits of nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. *Am J Med.* 1998;104(3):9S-13S.
5. Kim SY, Chang YJ, Cho HM, Hwang YW, Moon YS. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for the common cold. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2015;21(9):CD006362.
6. Joshi GP, Ogunnaike BO. Consequences of inadequate postoperative pain relief and chronic persistent postoperative pain. *Anesthesiol Clin North Am.* 2005;23:21-36.
7. Kean WF, Rainsford KD, Kean IR. Management of chronic musculoskeletal pain in the elderly: opinions on oral medication use. *Inflammopharmacology.* 2008;16:53-75.
8. Shipton EA. The transition from acute to chronic postsurgical pain. *Anaesth Intensive Care.* 2011;39:824-836.
9. McGreevy K, Bottros MM, Raja SN. Preventing chronic pain following acute pain: risk factors, preventive strategies, and their efficacy. *Eur J Pain Suppl.* 2011;5(2):365-372.
10. Tighe P, Buckenmaier CC 3rd, Boezaart AP, et al. Acute pain medicine in the United States: a status report. *Pain Med.* 2015;16(9):1806-1826.
11. Amy Janke E, Kozak AT. "The more pain I have, the more I want to eat": obesity in the context of chronic pain. *Obesity (Silver Spring).* 2012;20(10):2027-2034.
12. Ferguson S, Al-Rehany L, Tang C, Gougeon L, Warwick K, Madill J. Self-reported causes of weight gain: among prebariatric surgery patients. *Can J Diet Pract Res.* 2013;74(4):189-192.
13. Hoffmann NG, Olofsson O, Salen B, Wickstrom L. Prevalence of abuse and dependency in chronic pain patients. *Int J Addict.* 1995;30(8):919-927.
14. Glare P, Aubrey K, Myles P. Postoperative pain management and opioids 1 (series): transition from acute to chronic pain after surgery. *Lancet.* 2019; 393:1537-1546.
15. Torrance N, Elliott AM, Lee AJ, Smith BH. Severe chronic pain is associated with increased 10 year mortality. A cohort record linkage study. *Eur J Pain.* 2010;14(4):380-386.
16. Voscopoulos C, Lema M. When does acute pain become chronic? *Br J Anaesth.* 2010;Suppl 1:i69-i85.
17. Wang CK, Hah JM, Carroll I. Factors contributing to pain chronicity. *Curr Pain Headache Rep.* 2009;13(1):7-11.
18. Ossipov MH, Hong Sun T, Malan P Jr, Lai J, Porreca F. Mediation of spinal nerve injury induced tactile allodynia by descending facilitatory pathways in the dorsolateral funiculus in rats. *Neurosci Lett.* 2000;290(2):129-132.
19. Brennan TJ, Kehlet H. Preventive analgesia to reduce wound hyperalgesia and persistent postsurgical pain: not an easy path. *Anesthesiology.* 2005;103(4):681-683.
20. Lavand'homme P, De Kock M, Waterloos H. Intraoperative epidural analgesia combined with ketamine provides effective preventive analgesia in patients undergoing major digestive surgery. *Anesthesiology.* 2005;103(4):813-820.
21. Halford GM, Lordkipanidzé M, Watson SP. 50th anniversary of the discovery of ibuprofen: an interview with Dr Stewart Adams. *Platelets.* 2012;23(6):415-422.
22. Brass A. A naproxen symposium: introduction. *J Clin Pharmacol.* 1975;15(4 Pt. 2):309-310.
23. Aleve [package insert]. Mississauga, ON: Bayer; 2017.
24. Sevelius H, Runkel R, Segre E, Bloomfield SS. Bioavailability of naproxen sodium and its relationship to clinical analgesic effects. *Br J Clin Pharmacol.* 1980;10(3): 259-263.
25. Food and Drug Administration. Drugs@FDA: FDA-approved drugs. New drug application (NDA):018164. https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cder/daf/index.cfm?event=overview.process&ApplNo=018164. Accessed January 23, 2020.
26. Food and Drug Administration. Drugs@FDA: FDA-approved drugs. New drug application: 020204. https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/scripts/cder/daf/index.cfm?event=overview.process&ApplNo=020204. Accessed January 23, 2020.
27. National Library of Medicine. PubChem. S-Naproxen. https://pubchem.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/substance/348275464. Published November 22, 2017. Accessed January, 23 2020.
28. Will JS, Bury DC, Miller JA. Mechanical low back pain. *Am Fam Physician.* 2018;98(7):421-428.
29. Chou R, Qaseem A, Snow V, et al; Clinical Efficacy Assessment Subcommittee of the American College of Physicians; American College of Physicians; American Pain Society Low Back Pain Guidelines Panel. Diagnosis and treatment of low back pain: a joint clinical practice guideline from the American College of Physicians and the American Pain Society. *Ann Intern Med.* 2007;147(7):478-491.
30. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services. Report on pain management best practices: updates, gaps, inconsistencies, and recommendations. https://www.hhs.gov/ash/advisory-committees/pain/reports/index.html. Published December 6, 2019. Accessed May 16, 2020.
31. Hochberg MC, Altman RD, April KT, et al; American College of Rheumatology. American College of Rheumatology 2012 recommendations for the use of nonpharmacologic and pharmacologic therapies in osteoarthritis of the hand, hip, and knee. *Arthritis Care Res (Hoboken).* 2012;64(4):465-474.
32. Sinusas K. Osteoarthritis: diagnosis and treatment. *Am Fam Physician.* 2012;85(1): 49-56.
33. Jevsevar DS; American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons Board of Directors. Treatment of osteoarthritis of the knee: evidence-based guideline, 2nd edition. *J Am Acad Orthop Surg.* 2013;21(9):571-576. doi: 10.5435/JAAOS-21-09-571.
34. McAlindon TE, Bannuru RR, Sullivan MC, et al. OARSI guidelines for the non-surgical management of knee osteoarthritis. *Osteoarthritis Cartilage.* 2014;22:363-388.
35. American Headache Society. The American Headache Society position statement on integrating new migraine treatments into clinical practice. *Headache.* 2019;59:1-18.
36. Mayans L, Walling A. Acute migraine headache: treatment strategies. *Am Fam Physician.* 2018;97(4):243-251.
37. Osayande AS, Mehulic S. Diagnosis and initial management of dysmenorrhea. *Am Fam Physician.* 2014;89(5):341-346.
38. ACOG Committee Opinion No. 760: Dysmenorrhea and endometriosis in the adolescent. *Obstet Gynecol.* 2018;132(6):e249-e258. doi: 10.1097/AOG.0000000000002978.
39. American Dental Association. Oral health topics: oral analgesics for acute dental pain. https://www.ada.org/en/member-center/oral-health-topics/oral-analgesics-for-acute-dental-pain. Updated September 17, 2019. Accessed May 15, 2020.
40. Ylikorkala O, Dawood MY. New concepts in dysmenorrhea. *Am J Obstet Gynecol.* 1978;130(7):833-847.
41. Dawood MY. Primary dysmenorrhea: advances in pathogenesis and management. *Obstet Gynecol.* 2006;108(2);428-441.
42. Marjoribanksd J, Ayeleke RO, Farquhar C, Proctor M. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for dysmenorrhoea. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2015;(7):CD001751.
43. Daniels SE, Paredes-Diaz A, An R, Centofanti R, Tajaddini A. Significant, long-lasting pain relief in primary dysmenorrhea with low-dose naproxen sodium compared with acetaminophen: a double-blind, randomized, single-dose, crossover study. *Curr Med Res Opin.* 2019;35(12):2139-2147.
44. Renton T. Dental (odontogenic) pain. *Rev Pain.* 2011;5(1):2-7.
45. American Dental Association. Substance use disorders. https://www.ada.org/en/advocacy/current-policies/substance-use-disorders. Updated December 10, 2018. Accessed January 2, 2020.
46. Smith EA, Marshall JG, Selph SS, Barker DR, Sedgley CM. Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs for managing postoperative endodontic pain in patients who present with preoperative pain: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *J Endod.* 2017;43(1):7-15.
47. Kiersch TA, Halladay SC, Hormel PC. A single-dose, double-blind comparison of naproxen sodium, acetaminophen, and placebo in postoperative dental pain. *Clin Ther.* 1994;16(3):394-404.
48. Kiersch TA, Halladay SC, Koschik M. A double-blind, randomized study of naproxen sodium, ibuprofen, and placebo in postoperative dental pain. *Clin Ther.* 1993;15(5):845-854.
49. Cooper SA, Desjardins P, Brain P, et al. Longer analgesic effect with naproxen sodium than ibuprofen in post-surgical dental pain: a randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, single-dose trial. *Curr Med Res Opin.* 2019;35(12):2149-2158.
50. Oskoui M, Pringsheim T, Holler-Managan Y, et al. Practice guideline update summary: acute treatment of migraine in children and adolescents: Report of the Guideline Development, Dissemination, and Implementation Subcommittee of the American Academy of Neurology and the American Headache Society. *Neurology.* 2019;93(11):487-499.
51. Lindegaard KF, Ovrelid L Sjaastad O. Naproxen in the prevention of migraine attacks. A double-blind placebo-controlled cross-over study. *Headache.* 1980;20(2);96-98.
52. Suthisisang CC, Poolsup N, Suksomboon N, Lertpipopmetha V, Tepwitukgid B. Meta-analysis of the efficacy and safety of naproxen sodium in the acute treatment of migraine. *Headache.* 2010;50(5):808-18.
53. Sperber SJ, Hendley JO, Hayden FG, Riker DK, Sorrentino JV, Gwaltney JM Jr. Effects of naproxen on experimental rhinovirus colds. A randomized, double-blind, controlled trial. *Ann Intern Med.* 1992;117(1):37-41.
54. Law S, Derry S, Moore RA. Naproxen with or without an antiemetic for acute migraine headaches in adults. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2013;CD009455.
55. Ricciotti E, FitzGerald GA. Prostaglandins and Inflammation. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol.* 2011;31(5);986-1000.
56. White WB, Kloner RA, Angiolillo DJ, Davidson MH. Cardiorenal safety of OTC analgesics. *J Cardiovasc Pharmacol Ther.* 2018;23(2):103-118.
57. Angiolillo DJ, Weisman SM. Clinical pharmacology and cardiovascular safety of naproxen. *Am J Cardiovasc Drugs.* 2017;17(2):97-107.
58. Szeto CC, Sugano K, Wang JG, et al. Non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drug (NSAID) therapy in patients with hypertension, cardiovascular, renal or gastrointestinal comorbidities: joint APAGE/APLAR/APSDE/APSH/APSN/PoA recommendations. *Gut.* 2020;69(4):617-629.
59. Nissen SE, Yeomans ND, Solomon DH, et al; PRECISION Trial Investigators. Cardiovascular safety of celecoxib, naproxen, or ibuprofen for arthritis. *N Engl J Med.* 2016;375(26):2519-2529.
60. Coxib and traditional NSAID Trialists' (CNT) Collaboration; Bhala N, Emberson J, Merhi A, et al. Vascular and upper gastrointestinal effects of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs: meta-analyses of individual participant data from randomised trials. *Lancet.* 2013.;382(9894):769-779.
61. Moore N, Scheiman JM. Gastrointestinal safety and tolerability of oral non-aspirin over-the-counter analgesics. *Postgrad Med.* 2018;130(2):188-199.
62. Kyerematen K, Troullos E, Paredes-Diaz A. Safety of naproxen compared with placebo, ibuprofen and acetaminophen: a pooled analysis of eight multiple-dose, short-term, randomized controlled studies. *Curr Med Res Opin.* 2019;35(10): 1671-1676.

Managing the Burden of Dementia-Related Delusions and Hallucinations

Gary W Small, MD

CONTINUING MEDICAL EDUCATION

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Identify the burden experienced by patients with dementia-related delusions and hallucinations.
- Assess patients with dementia for the presence of delusions and hallucinations.
- Individualize treatment in patients with dementia-related delusions and hallucinations.
- Align treatment of patients with Parkinson's psychosis with current recommendations.

TARGET AUDIENCE

Family physicians and clinicians who wish to gain increased knowledge and greater competency regarding primary care management of dementia-related delusions and hallucinations.

DISCLOSURES

As a continuing medical education provider accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME), Primary Care Education Consortium (PCEC) requires any individual in a position to influence educational content to disclose any financial interest or other personal relationship with any commercial interest. This includes any entity producing, marketing, re-selling, or distributing health care goods or services consumed by, or used on, patients. Mechanisms are in place to identify and resolve any potential conflict of interest prior to the start of the activity. In addition, any discussion of off-label, experimental, or investigational use of drugs or devices will be disclosed by the faculty.

Dr. Small discloses that he serves as a paid consultant or on the advisory board for AARP, Acadia, Avanir, Genentech, Handok, Herbalife, Medscape, RB Health, Roche, Theravalues, and WebMD.

Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, editorial support, discloses he has no real or apparent conflicts of interests to report. Additional PCEC staff report no conflicts of interest.

SPONSORSHIP

This activity is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium, in collaboration with the Primary Care Metabolic Group.

ACCREDITATION

The Primary Care Education Consortium is accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME) to provide continuing medical education for physicians.

CREDIT DESIGNATION

AMA PRA Category 1 – Primary Care Education Consortium designates this enduring material for a maximum of 1.0 AMA PRA Category 1 credit(s)™. Physicians should claim only the credit commensurate with the extent of their participation in the activity. CME is available September 1, 2020, to August 31, 2021.

METHOD OF PARTICIPATION

PHYSICIANS: To receive CME credit, please read the journal article and, on completion, go to www.pceconsortium.org/dementia to complete the online post-test and receive your certificate of completion.

PHYSICIAN ASSISTANTS AND NURSE PRACTITIONERS: AANP, ANCC, and AAPA accept certificates of participation of educational activities certified for AMA PRA Category 1 Credit™ from organizations accredited by ACCME.

SUPPORTER

This article is supported by an educational grant from Acadia.

FACULTY

Gary W Small, MD, Professor, Psychiatry and Biobehavioral Sciences, Parlow-Solomon Professor on Aging, David Geffen School of Medicine; Director, Division of Geriatric Psychiatry, UCLA Semel Institute; Director, UCLA Longevity Center; University of California, Los Angeles, CA.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Editorial support was provided by Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, at the Primary Care Education Consortium (PCEC).

INTRODUCTION

Dementia is defined as a clinical syndrome that involves a cognitive impairment severe enough to impair the patient's ability to function independently.[1] Many different conditions can cause dementia, which is often characterized by a decline in memory, language, problem-solving, or other thinking skills. The most common form of dementia, occurring in up to 70% of the estimated 8 million people living with dementia in the United States, is Alzheimer's disease (AD).[2] Other subtypes include vascular dementia (20%), dementia with Lewy bodies (5%), Parkinson's disease (PD) dementia (4%), and frontotemporal dementia (1%).[2-4] Many patients with dementia have several different causes, eg, combined vascular dementia and AD.[5] Although dementia may occur in younger adults, the prevalence of dementia increases with age, affecting 2% of those age 65 to 69 years and 33% pf those age ≥90 years.[6] Due to the aging US population, the prevalence of dementia is expected to grow, with some estimates indicating a tripling of AD dementia prevalence by 2050.[7]

Neuropsychiatric symptoms are commonly experienced by people with dementia.[8] Symptoms that typically occur earlier in the course of dementia, often before diagnosis, include social withdrawal, suicidal ideation, depression, paranoia, anxiety, diurnal rhythm disturbances, and/or mood changes.[9] Symptoms that generally first appear shortly after diagnosis include irritability, delusions and hallucinations, agitation and aggression, wandering, and/or sexually inappropriate behavior.[9]

Delusions and hallucinations are among the signs and symptoms associated with a loss of contact with reality, or psychosis. A delusion is a false, fixed belief despite evidence to the contrary, whereas a hallucination is a perception-like experience that occurs without an external stimulus and is sensory in nature.[10] An estimated 2.4 million people in the United States have dementia-related delusions and hallucinations.[11,12] The prevalence of delusions and hallucinations vary based on the type of dementia. They are most common in patients with dementia with Lewy bodies or PD, occurring in 75% and 50%, respectively, and least common in patients with AD or vascular dementia (<30%).[11,12] Older adults with dementia may experience delusions and/or hallucinations 2 to 6 times per week.[13] Delusions persist longer than 3 months in 82% of patients with dementia and hallucinations in 52%.[14,15]

BURDEN OF DEMENTIA-RELATED DELUSIONS AND HALLUCINATIONS

Patient burden

Dementia-related delusions and hallucinations contribute to a wide variety of behavioral and psychological symptoms. These symptoms include insomnia, confusion, agitation, personality change, self-care problems, and cognitive and functional impairment.[16] Dementia-related delusions are associated with a 2- to nearly 3-fold increased risk of aggression, and dementia-related hallucinations with up to a 1.4-fold increased risk of aggression.[17,18] A prospective analysis of patients with early-stage AD (N=456) at baseline followed for 14 years showed that delusions were associated with an increased risk of cognitive (relative risk [RR] 1.50; 95% confidence interval [CI], 1.07-2.08) and functional (RR 1.41; 95% CI, 1.02-1.94) decline.[19] The effect of AD-related hallucinations is even greater, as the analysis showed greater risk of cognitive (RR 2.25; 95% CI, 1.54-2.27) and functional (RR 2.25; 95% CI, 1.13-2.28) decline. Moreover, patients who experienced hallucinations were at increased risk for institutionalization (RR 1.60; 95% CI, 1.13-2.28) and death (RR 1.49; 95% CI, 1.03-2.14).

By contrast, a case-control study that examined the association between the Neuropsychiatric Inventory (NPI) score in older adults with AD (N=641) showed no increased risk of nursing home placement in persons with dementia-related hallucinations.[20] However, persons with AD and agitation/aggression, disinhibition, irritability, delusions, sleep disorder, or appetite disorder were significantly more likely to be placed in a nursing home. Overall, a 10% increase in the total NPI score was associated with a 30% increased odds of nursing home placement.

A population-based study of older adults with possible or probable AD dementia indicated that those with dementia-related psychosis were twice as likely to progress to severe dementia and 1.5 times more likely to die during the 3 to 5 years of follow-up.[21] The presence of psychosis appears to portend a more severe disease course, particularly for patients with both delusions and hallucinations compared with patients with only delusions or hallucinations.[22]

The occurrence of delusions also appears to be associated with a severe disease course compared to people with dementia who do not experience delusions. A 2-year longitudinal analysis of older adults with AD showed that a delusion of theft was related to the degree of cognitive dysfunction and functional impairment, while a delusion of abandonment was related to the severity of cognitive impairment.[23] By contrast, hallucinations were not associated with the degree of cognitive or functional impairment.

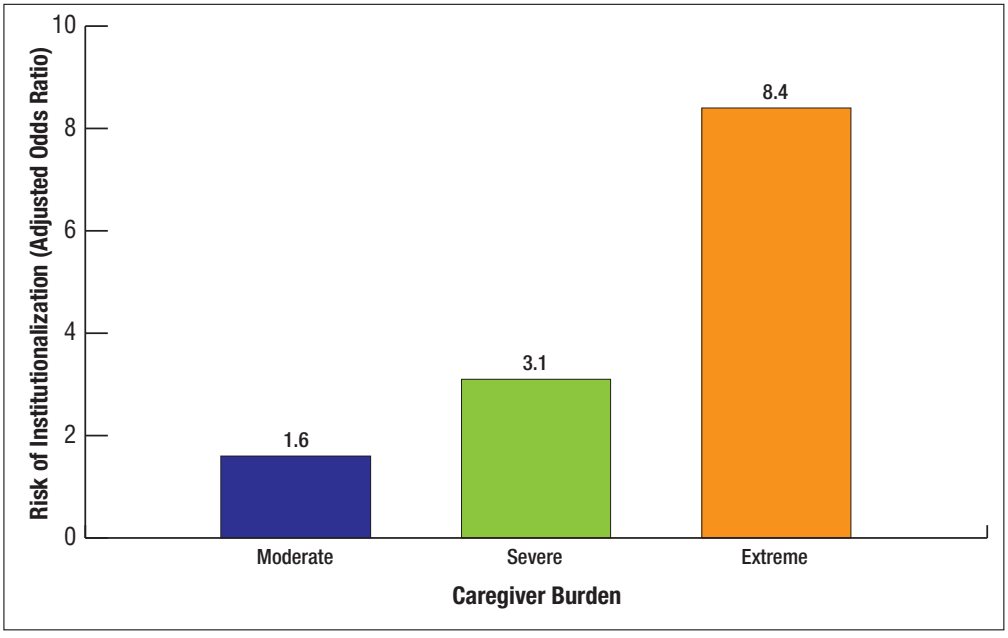
For patients with dementia, the occurrence of delusions appears to be associated with a severe disease course compared to people with dementia who do not experience delusions.

Caregiver burden

The burden of psychosis-related dementia extends beyond patients to their caregivers.[24] Because two-thirds (64%) of older adults with dementia require assistance with ≥2 self-care or mobility activities and 70% of older adults with dementia receive help from family caregivers, the patient's family is particularly affected.[6] Delusions, irritability, and agitation/aggression in people with dementia are among the most distressing neuropsychiatric symptoms for family caregivers.[25] Common delusions that target the caregiver relate to accusations of theft, abandonment, and spousal infidelity.[13,26] The stress experienced by caregivers – family as well as professional – can even impair their memory abilities.[27] Behavioral problems in older adults with dementia often lead to caregiver depression and a greater sense of burden.[28]

Heightened caregiver burden is a major reason for earlier institutionalization of the individual with dementia.[26,29]

FIGURE 1. **Association of caregiver burden with risk of institutionalization of patients with dementia[26]**



One investigation showed that, over a 5-year period, patients with dementia were more likely to be institutionalized when their caregivers reported moderate, severe, or extreme burden by a factor of 1.6, 3.1, and 8.4, respectively (**FIGURE 1**).[26] Professional caregivers in long-term care facilities also report high levels of emotional exhaustion and burnout, particularly when caring for residents with agitated behavior.[29]

DIAGNOSTIC CRITERIA OF DEMENTIA-RELATED PSYCHOSIS

Diagnostic criteria for psychosis have been proposed for patients with dementia due to AD and related dementias.[30] Key criteria include requiring that patients must have had visual or auditory hallucinations and/or delusions for a month or more, but those symptoms of psychosis must not have been present continuously prior to the onset of dementia symptoms. The onset of the hallucinations and/or delusions is generally insidious rather than acute as might be observed with delirium secondary to underlying dehydration, urinary tract infection, or acute pain syndrome.[31] The hallucinations and/or delusions must be severe enough to cause some disruption in functioning of the patient and/or others.[30] Psychotic symptoms often occur with associated features, such as agitation, apathy, or depression.[30]

As implied by these proposed criteria, a key initial objective in assessing the patient with dementia who exhibits psychotic symptoms is to identify any underlying medical condition or risk factor for psychosis, such as chronic bed rest, sensory impairment, or social isolation.[31] Psychosis that occurs for the first time in late life is likely due to dementia or some neurologic condition such as PD or stroke. Psychosis that occurs earlier in life is more likely due to schizophrenia, mood disorder, or some other primary cause.[31] For confirmation that dementia is the cause of the psychosis, it is also necessary to determine that the psychotic symptom does not occur exclusively during the course of a delirium.[30] Consideration also should be given to a substance of abuse as a reason for the symptoms, or an iatrogenic cause such as medications. For example, dopaminergic and anticholinergic medications are common causes of psychosis in patients with PD.[32]

TREATMENT OF DEMENTIA-RELATED PSYCHOSIS

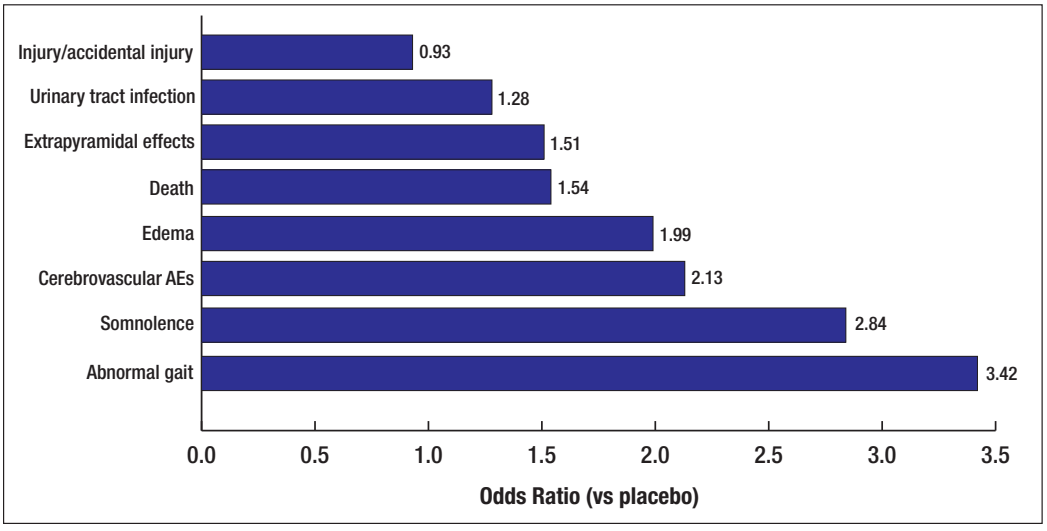
The treatment of psychosis in patients with dementia is multifaceted and is guided by the findings from the diagnostic evaluation. In addition to treating the symptoms of dementia, symptoms caused by underlying medical conditions, medications, or environmental and psychosocial triggers are important targets.

Nonpharmacological treatment

The Alzheimer's Association and the American Psychiatric Association recommend nonpharmacological approaches as first-line therapy for nonemergency dementia-related psychosis.[33,34] The use of nonpharmacological approaches is reasonable as an initial intervention unless the patient's psychotic symptoms pose a high safety risk to themselves or others, in which case hospitalization is appropriate. Nonpharmacological approaches typically focus on the caregiver strategies and the environment in which care is provided, because patient and caregiver burden is so strongly linked to the likelihood of patient institutionalization.[34] Consequently, caregiver distress is important to identify and address.

Caregivers should be educated to provide a variety of psychosocial interventions that might be helpful to the patient. These interventions include[33,34]:

FIGURE 2. **Adverse events associated with atypical antipsychotics in patients with dementia**[39]



Abbreviations: AE, adverse event.
Note: The odds ratio for all events (except injury/accidental injury) is statistically significant compared to placebo.

- Providing routine activities, including exercise
- Providing cues to heighten orientation
- Maintaining a calm environment by reducing environmental clutter and ambient noise, optimizing lighting and walkways, and playing music
- Separating the patient from environmental triggers of symptoms, eg, background noises
- Avoiding responses that contradict the patient's perception of reality and respecting their ideas about and explanation for their perceptions, even if incorrect
- Speaking slowly and calmly in a normal tone of voice
- Redirecting the person to participate in an enjoyable activity or offering comfort food or comforting comments

Caregiver resources are available through the Alzheimer's Association (www.alz.org) and Parkinson's Foundation (https://www.parkinson.org/Living-with-Parkinsons/For-Caregivers).

Pharmacological treatment

Antipsychotics

Antipsychotic therapy plays a central role in the treatment of psychosis, but the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has not approved a pharmacological treatment for dementia-related psychosis. Nonetheless, off-label use of atypical, or second-generation, antipsychotics has been the mainstay of pharmacological treatment for psychotic symptoms and agitation in patients with dementia. Antipsychotics are most effective for improving positive psychotic symptoms, eg, delusions and hallucinations, with less benefit for negative symptoms, eg, flat affect.

The use of antipsychotics for dementia-related psychotic symptoms is not without risk. A 2005 FDA analysis concluded that the use of atypical antipsychotics is associated with increased mortality in older adults with dementia.[35] Subsequent investigations confirmed these findings and extended the increased mortality risk to include conventional, ie, first-generation, antipsychotics.[36-38] Moreover, in patients with dementia, atypical antipsychotics have been shown to be associated with cognitive decline and increased risk of metabolic events such as glycemic abnormalities and elevated lipids, as well as an increased risk of adverse events, including abnormal gait, somnolence, edema, extrapyramidal symptoms, and urinary tract infections (**FIGURE 2**).[38-40]

Consequently, most antipsychotics are not approved for the treatment of psychotic symptoms in patients with dementia. In addition, all antipsychotics carry a black box warning indicating that elderly adults with dementia-related psychosis treated with antipsychotic medications are at an increased risk of death.

The FDA analysis and subsequent investigations led the American Geriatrics Society to recommend against the use of conventional and atypical antipsychotics in older adults, particularly those with dementia, as described in their updated "2019 Beers criteria for potentially inappropriate medication use in older adults."[41] In fact, the Beers criteria recommend avoiding the use of all antipsychotics (except quetiapine, clozapine, and pimavanserin) in older adults with PD, as their use may worsen parkinsonian symptoms.

Nonemergency use of antipsychotics may, however, be considered for patients with behavioral problems of dementia or delirium, if such patients have not achieved an adequate response to nonpharmacological therapy and pose a risk to themselves or others, or when the symptoms are of significant distress to the patient.[34,41] A decision to use antipsychotics in such situations should be based on a discussion of the potential risks and benefits from antipsychotic

medication with the patient, family, or others involved with the patient. Antipsychotic treatment should be initiated at a low dose and titrated to the minimum effective dose as tolerated.[34]

Pimavanserin

While no medications have been approved by the FDA for dementia-related psychosis, one atypical antipsychotic, pimavanserin, may be useful in these patients. Pimavanserin has a unique pharmacological profile that acts through a combination of inverse agonist and antagonist activity at serotonin type 2A receptors and, to a lesser degree, serotonin type 2C receptors. This is in contrast to atypical antipsychotics that are thought to exert their effects largely through antagonism of the dopamine type 2 and serotonin type 2A receptors. Pimavanserin is approved for the treatment of hallucinations and delusions associated with PD psychosis.

The approval of pimavanserin was based on a double-blind, placebo-controlled study of 199 patients with PD age ≥40 years. Patients could not have been diagnosed with dementia concurrent with or before PD.[42] After a 2-week lead-in phase to limit the placebo response, patients were randomized to pimavanserin 40 mg/d or placebo. Improvement of the primary outcome, as assessed using the Scale for Assessment of Positive Symptoms adapted for PD (SAPS-PD), was significantly greater with pimavanserin compared with placebo. From a baseline score of 15.9, the SAPS-PD score for patients given pimavanserin decreased to 10.1 after 6 weeks of treatment, while treatment with placebo led to a decrease from a baseline score of 14.7 to 12.0 (P=.001). Significant improvement with pimavanserin was also observed with respect to separate measures of hallucinations and delusions. Treatment-emergent adverse events occurring in ≥5% in either group (pimavanserin vs placebo) included urinary tract infection (13% vs 12%), falls (11% vs 9%), hallucinations (7% vs 4%), peripheral edema (7% vs 3%), nausea (6% vs 6%), confusion (6% vs 3%), and headache (1% vs 5%). There was no evidence of treatment-related impairment of motor function in either group. Ten patients in the pimavanserin group (6 because of psychosis) and 2 patients in the placebo group discontinued because of an adverse event.

The safety and efficacy of pimavanserin also have been investigated in a phase 2 trial involving 181 nursing home patients with possible or probable AD and psychotic symptoms.[43] Following 6 weeks of treatment, significantly greater improvement in the NPI-Nursing Home version was observed in patients treated with pimavanserin vs placebo.[43] No adverse effect on cognition or motor function was observed; more patients treated with pimavanserin experienced agitation.

The phase 2 SERENE (NCT02992132) and phase 3 HARMONY (NCT03325556) trials have evaluated the safety and efficacy of pimavanserin in patients with psychosis and either AD or various common subtypes of dementia, respectively. The extension phase of SERENE was completed in February 2019, but no data have been published. HARMONY was recently stopped early after the planned interim efficacy analysis showed pimavanserin to demonstrate a significantly longer time to relapse of psychosis compared with placebo.

SUMMARY

Neuropsychiatric symptoms such as delusions and hallucinations are commonly experienced by the estimated 8 million persons with dementia in the United States. Dementia-related delusions and hallucinations result in a wide variety of behavioral and psychological symptoms that contribute to substantial patient and caregiver burden and portend a more severe disease course of dementia. The diagnosis of dementia-related psychosis is based on clinical findings, with a key objective to rule out medical and other causes of the psychosis. Nonpharmacological approaches are generally first-line treatment, except when urgent symptom control is needed. None of the antipsychotics currently available are approved for dementia-related psychosis; in fact, antipsychotics are associated with increased mortality in older adults with dementia. Pimavanserin is an atypical antipsychotic with a unique mechanism of action that is approved for the treatment of hallucinations and delusions associated with PD psychosis; some evidence indicates the safety and effectiveness of pimavanserin for patients with dementia-related psychosis. ●

REFERENCES

1. Small GW, Jarvik LF. The dementia syndrome. *Lancet*. 1982;2(8313):1443-1446.
2. Goodman RA, Lochner KA, Thambisetty M, Wingo TS, Posner SF, Ling SM. Prevalence of dementia subtypes in United States Medicare fee-for-service beneficiaries, 2011-2013. *Alzheimers Dement*. 2017;13(1):28-37.
3. Plassman BL, Langa KM, Fisher GG, et al. Prevalence of dementia in the United States: the aging, demographics, and memory study. *Neuroepidemiology*. 2007;29(1-2):125-132.
4. Aarsland D, Zaccai J, Brayne C. A systematic review of prevalence studies of dementia in Parkinson's disease. *Mov Disord*. 2005;20(10):1255-1263.
5. National Institute on Aging. Basics of Alzheimer's disease and dementia. What is dementia? Symptoms, types, and diagnosis. Published 2017. https://www.nia.nih.gov/health/what-dementia-symptoms-types-and-diagnosis. Accessed May 27, 2020.
6. Chi W, Graf E, Hughes L, et al. Community-dwelling older adults with dementia and their caregivers: key indicators from the National Health and Aging Trends study. Published 2019. https://aspe.hhs.gov/basic-report/community-dwelling-older-adults-dementia-and-their-caregivers-key-indicators-national-health-and-aging-trends-study. Accessed March 27, 2020.
7. Hebert LE, Weuve J, Scherr PA, Evans DA. Alzheimer disease in the United States (2010-2050) estimated using the 2010 census. *Neurology*. 2013;80(19):1778-1783.
8. Margallo-Lana M, Swann A, O'Brien J, et al. Prevalence and pharmacological management of behavioural and psychological symptoms amongst dementia sufferers living in care environments. *Int J Geriatr Psychiatry*. 2001;16(1):39-44.
9. Jost BC, Grossberg GT. The evolution of psychiatric symptoms in Alzheimer's disease: a natural history study. *J Am Geriatr Soc*. 1996;44(9):1078-1081.
10. American Psychiatric Association. *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders* (DSM-5). Published 2018. https://www.psychiatry.org/psychiatrists/practice/dsm. Accessed July 24, 2018.
11. Johnson DK, Watts AS, Chapin BA, Anderson R, Burns JM. Neuropsychiatric profiles

in dementia. *Alzheimer Dis Assoc Disord.* 2011;25(4):326-332.
12. Aarsland D, Ballard C, Larsen JP, McKeith I. A comparative study of psychiatric symptoms in dementia with Lewy bodies and Parkinson's disease with and without dementia. *Int J Geriatr Psychiatry.* 2001;16(5):528-536.
13. Ballard CG, Saad K, Patel A, et al. The prevalence and phenomenology of psychotic symptoms in dementia sufferers. *Int J Geriatr Psychiatry.* 1995;10(6):477-485.
14. van der Linde RM, Dening T, Stephan BC, Prina AM, Evans E, Brayne C. Longitudinal course of behavioural and psychological symptoms of dementia: systematic review. *Br J Psychiatry.* 2016;209(5):366-377.
15. Steinberg M, Shao H, Zandi P, et al. Point and 5-year period prevalence of neuropsychiatric symptoms in dementia: the Cache County Study. *Int J Geriatr Psychiatry.* 2008;23(2):170-177.
16. Naimark D, Jackson E, Rockwell E, Jeste DV. Psychotic symptoms in Parkinson's disease patients with dementia. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 1996;44(3):296-299.
17. Gilley DW, Wilson RS, Beckett LA, Evans DA. Psychotic symptoms and physically aggressive behavior in Alzheimer's disease. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 1997;45(9):1074-1079.
18. Leonard R, Tinetti ME, Allore HG, Drickamer MA. Potentially modifiable resident characteristics that are associated with physical or verbal aggression among nursing home residents with dementia. *Arch Intern Med.* 2006;166(12):1295-1300.
19. Scarmeas N, Brandt J, Albert M, et al. Delusions and hallucinations are associated with worse outcome in Alzheimer disease. *Arch Neurol.* 2005;62(10):1601-1608.
20. Porter CN, Miller MC, Lane M, Cornman C, Sarsour K, Kahle-Wrobleski K. The influence of caregivers and behavioral and psychological symptoms on nursing home placement of persons with Alzheimer's disease: a matched case-control study. *SAGE Open Med.* 2016;4:2050312116661877.
21. Peters ME, Schwartz S, Han D, et al. Neuropsychiatric symptoms as predictors of progression to severe Alzheimer's dementia and death: the Cache County Dementia Progression Study. *Am J Psychiatry.* 2015;172(5):460-465.
22. Connors MH, Ames D, Woodward M, Brodaty H. Psychosis and clinical outcomes in Alzheimer disease: a longitudinal study. *Am J Geriatr Psychiatry.* 2018;26(3):304-313.
23. Haupt M, Romero B, Kurz A. Delusions and hallucinations in Alzheimer's disease: results from a two-year longitudinal study. *Int J Geriatr Psychiatry.* 1996;11(11):965-972.
24. Mohamed S, Rosenheck R, Lyketsos CG, Schneider LS. Caregiver burden in Alzheimer disease: cross-sectional and longitudinal patient correlates. *Am J Geriatr Psychiatry.* 2010;18(10):917-927.
25. Fauth EB, Gibbons A. Which behavioral and psychological symptoms of dementia are the most problematic? Variability by prevalence, intensity, distress ratings, and associations with caregiver depressive symptoms. *Int J Geriatr Psychiatry.* 2014;29(3):263-271.
26. Hebert R, Dubois MF, Wolfson C, Chambers L, Cohen C. Factors associated with long-term institutionalization of older people with dementia: data from the Canadian Study of Health and Aging. *J Gerontol A Biol Sci Med Sci.* 2001;56(11):M693-M699.
27. Correa MS, de Lima DB, Giacobbo BL, Vedovelli K, Argimon IIL, Bromberg E. Mental health in familial caregivers of Alzheimer's disease patients: are the effects of chronic stress on cognition inevitable? *Stress.* 2019;22(1):83-92.
28. Pinquart M, Sorensen S. Associations of stressors and uplifts of caregiving with caregiver burden and depressive mood: a meta-analysis. *J Gerontol B Psychol Sci Soc Sci.* 2003;58(2):P112-P128.
29. Costello H, Walsh S, Cooper C, Livingston G. A systematic review and meta-analysis of the prevalence and associations of stress and burnout among staff in long-term care facilities for people with dementia. *Int Psychogeriatr.* 2019;31(8):1203-1216.
30. Jeste DV, Finkel SI. Psychosis of Alzheimer's disease and related dementias. Diagnostic criteria for a distinct syndrome. *Am J Geriatr Psychiatry.* 2000;8(1):29-34.
31. American Geriatrics Society. A guide to the management of psychotic disorders and neuropsychiatric symptoms of dementia in older adults. Published 2011. https://qioprogram.org/sites/default/files/AGS_Guidelines_for_Telligen.pdf. Accessed May 29, 2020.
32. Peyser CE, Naimark D, Zuniga R, Jeste DV. Psychoses in Parkinson's disease. *Semin Clin Neuropsychiatry.* 1998;3(1):41-50.
33. Alzheimer's Association. Challenging behaviors. Published 2011. https://www.alz.org/national/documents/statements_antipsychotics.pdf. Accessed March 27, 2020.
34. Reus VI, Fochtmann LJ, Eyler AE, et al. The American Psychiatric Association practice guideline on the use of antipsychotics to treat agitation or psychosis in patients with dementia. Published 2016. https://psychiatryonline.org/doi/book/10.1176/appi.books.9780890426807. Accessed May 29, 2020.
35. US Food and Drug Administration. FDA Public Health Advisory. Deaths with antipsychotics in elderly patients with behavioral disturbances. Published 2005. http://psychrights.org/Drugs/FDAatypicalswarning4elderly.pdf. Accessed March 26, 2020.
36. Wang PS, Schneeweiss S, Avorn J, et al. Risk of death in elderly users of conventional vs. atypical antipsychotic medications. *N Engl J Med.* 2005;353(22):2335-2341.
37. Schneeweiss S, Setoguchi S, Brookhart A, Dormuth C, Wang PS. Risk of death associated with the use of conventional versus atypical antipsychotic drugs among elderly patients. *CMAJ.* 2007;176(5):627-632.
38. Schneider LS, Dagerman KS, Insel P. Risk of death with atypical antipsychotic drug treatment for dementia: meta-analysis of randomized placebo-controlled trials. *JAMA.* 2005;294(15):1934-1943.
39. Schneider LS, Dagerman K, Insel PS. Efficacy and adverse effects of atypical antipsychotics for dementia: meta-analysis of randomized, placebo-controlled trials. *Am J Geriatr Psychiatry.* 2006;14(3):191-210.
40. Trinkley KE, Sturm AM, Porter K, Nahata MC. Efficacy and safety of atypical antipsychotics for behavioral and psychological symptoms of dementia among community dwelling adults. *J Pharm Pract.* 2020;33(1):7-14.
41. Fick DM, Semla TP, Steinman M, et al. American geriatrics society 2019 updated AGS Beers Criteria(R) for potentially inappropriate medication use in older adults. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 2019;67(4):674-694.
42. Cummings J, Isaacson S, Mills R, et al. Pimavanserin for patients with Parkinson's disease psychosis: a randomised, placebo-controlled phase 3 trial. *Lancet.* 2014;383(9916):533-540.
43. Ballard C, Banister C, Khan Z, et al. Evaluation of the safety, tolerability, and efficacy of pimavanserin versus placebo in patients with Alzheimer's disease psychosis: a phase 2, randomised, placebo-controlled, double-blind study. *Lancet Neurol.* 2018;17(3):213-222.

Overcoming Barriers to the Diagnosis and Treatment of Insomnia

Thomas Roth, PhD

CONTINUING MEDICAL EDUCATION

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- Apply evidence-based diagnostic guidelines for patients who have clinical features consistent with insomnia
- Use evidence-based guidelines to develop comprehensive treatment plans that include cognitive-behavioral therapy, pharmacologic treatment, and combination therapies to achieve optimal outcomes
- Identify basic elements of cognitive-behavioral therapy for insomnia
- Differentiate among medications FDA-approved for treating insomnia by discussing mechanism of action, safety, efficacy, and use

TARGET AUDIENCE

Family physicians and clinicians who wish to gain increased knowledge and greater competency regarding primary care management of insomnia.

DISCLOSURES

As a continuing medical education provider accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME), Primary Care Education Consortium (PCEC) requires any individual in a position to influence educational content to disclose any financial interest or other personal relationship with any commercial interest. This includes any entity producing, marketing, re-selling or distributing health care goods or services consumed by, or used on, patients. Mechanisms are in place to identify and resolve any potential conflict of interest prior to the start of the activity. In addition, any discussion of off-label, experimental, or investigational use of drugs or devices will be disclosed by the faculty.

Dr. Roth discloses that he is on the advisory boards for Merck, Eisai, Jazz, Idorsia and Janssen.

Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, editorial support, discloses he has no real or apparent conflicts of interests to report. Additional PCEC staff report no conflicts of interest.

SPONSORSHIP

This activity is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium, in collaboration with the Primary Care Metabolic Group.

ACCREDITATION

The Primary Care Education Consortium is accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME) to provide continuing medical education for physicians.

CREDIT DESIGNATION

AMA PRA Category 1 – Primary Care Education Consortium designates this enduring material for a maximum of 1.0 AMA PRA Category 1 credit(s)™. Physicians should claim only the credit commensurate with the extent of their participation in the activity. CME is available September 1, 2020 to August 31, 2021.

METHOD OF PARTICIPATION

PHYSICIANS: To receive CME credit, please read the journal article and, on completion, go to www.pceconsortium.org/insomnia2 to complete the online post-test and receive your certificate of completion.

PHYSICIAN ASSISTANTS AND NURSE PRACTITIONERS: AANP, ANCC, and AAPA accept certificates of participation of educational activities certified for AMA PRA Category 1 Credit™ from organizations accredited by ACCME.

SUPPORTER

This article is supported by an educational grant from Eisai.

FACULTY

Thomas Roth, PhD, Director, Sleep Disorders and Research Center, Henry Ford Health System Detroit, MI.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Editorial support was provided by Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, at the Primary Care Education Consortium (PCEC).

CASE SCENARIO

A 72-year-old woman describes difficulty staying asleep and daytime fatigue for the past 8 months. Initially, she only had difficulty staying asleep 2 to 3 nights per week, but over the past 5 months, these symptoms have increased in severity and frequency. She notes increased irritability and lack of motivation during the day associated with her disturbed sleep.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

Insomnia, defined as difficulty initiating or maintaining sleep with associated daytime consequence, is 1 of 7 sleep-wake disorders according to the International Classification of Sleep Disorders, 3rd edition (ICSD-3).[1] Insomnia is common, particularly among older adults.[2] The estimated prevalence varies based on the criteria, ranging from 22% using DSM-IV-TR, 15% using Research Diagnostic Criteria/ICSD-2, and 4% using ICD-10 criteria.[3]

TABLE 1. **Assessment of sleep history**[16-18]

Sleep Problem	Sleep Times	Consequences of Disturbed Sleep	Symptom Duration
Number of awakenings Duration of awakenings Duration of the sleep problem	Bedtime Duration until sleep onset Final awakening time Nap time(s) Nap length(s)	Fatigue or malaise Poor attention or concentration Social/vocational/educational dysfunction Motor disturbance or irritability Daytime sleepiness Reduced motivation or energy Increased errors or accidents Behavioral problems Ongoing worry	<3 months or ≥3 months

Insomnia can lead to complications, such as psychiatric disorders,[4-8] falls,[9-12] cardiovascular disorders,[13,14] and metabolic syndrome.[15] Psychiatric complications include depression and anxiety, and cardiovascular disorders include ischemic heart disease, ischemic (but not hemorrhagic) stroke, hypertension, and heart failure.[13,14] Recent evidence indicates severe insomnia is associated with increased risk of metabolic syndrome in women age ≥50, but not men.[15]

DIAGNOSIS

Insomnia is diagnosed clinically based on history and characterizing the nature and severity of the sleep problem (**TABLE 1**).[16-18] Asking the patient to talk through a typical 24-hour day can provide valuable insight. A sleep diary could be helpful for patients with substantial variability in the sleep problem.

Well-rested adults fall asleep within 10 to 20 minutes of attempting to sleep and spend <30 minutes awake during the night. Adults with chronic insomnia, however, usually take ≥30 minutes to fall asleep (for those with sleep initiation difficulty), spend ≥30 minutes awake during the night (for those with sleep maintenance difficulty), and/or terminate sleep ≥30 minutes prior to the desired wake-up time. It is not uncommon for patients to report 1 or more nights of poor sleep followed by a night of better sleep or to have minimal sleep over several consecutive nights. Patients often overestimate the amount of time it takes to fall asleep and underestimate total sleep time.

Asking patients why they are experiencing the sleep problem often identifies contributing factors and comorbid psychiatric or medical disorders, such as depression, anxiety, pain, restless leg syndrome, and obstructive sleep apnea.[16] The Epworth Sleepiness Scale is useful to identify patients with daytime sleepiness. Question patients about the use of prescription and non-prescription medications, such as central nervous system stimulants or depressants, antidepressants, beta-agonists, diuretics, opioids, and glucocorticoids. Ask patients about their consumption of caffeine, alcohol, and complementary and alternative medicines. Actigraphy could be considered to characterize circadian rhythm patterns or sleep disturbances.[16] Other laboratory testing, such as blood, radiography, or polysomnography, is needed only to investigate suspected comorbid disorders.[16]

Because insomnia is a component of many psychiatric and medical conditions, an insomnia diagnosis should be considered only when the symptoms are prominent and require further evaluation and treatment. If an associated comorbidity is identified, consider that it is sometimes difficult to determine whether the insomnia or the comorbidity occurred first. Due to this uncertainty, insomnia is no longer classified as primary or secondary, and treatment targets both insomnia and the comorbid disorder.[1,19]

An insomnia diagnosis requires that the patient experiences difficulty initiating or maintaining sleep despite adequate opportunity and circumstances for sleep that results in daytime consequences.[1] Insomnia differs from sleep deprivation in that insomnia occurs despite adequate opportunity and circumstances for sleep, whereas sleep deprivation does not. Those with chronic insomnia experience symptoms ≥3 times per week for ≥3 months. Daytime consequences include fatigue or malaise, poor attention or concentration, social/vocational/educational dysfunction, increased errors or accidents, motor disturbance or irritability, daytime sleepiness, reduced motivation or energy, or behavioral problems such as hyperactivity, impulsivity, or aggression. Patients with chronic insomnia might have ongoing worry that insufficient sleep could lead to daytime dysfunction, thereby creating a cycle that worsens insomnia.

TREATMENT

Overview of clinical guidelines

Several guidelines for managing patients with insomnia have been developed. Based on growing understanding of the often bi-directional association between insomnia and

comorbid disorders, these guidelines increasingly have emphasized the importance of identifying and treating comorbid condition(s) as well as the insomnia itself.[16,19,20] Discussion regarding the treatment of comorbid disorders associated with insomnia is beyond the scope of this review.

Based on growing understanding of the often bi-directional association between insomnia and comorbid disorders, these guidelines have increasingly emphasized the importance of identifying and treating comorbid condition(s) as well as the insomnia itself.

Treatment options

The goal of therapy is to improve sleep and alleviate distress or dysfunction caused by insomnia.[21] Psychotherapy and pharmacologic therapy, alone or in combination, are recommended most often for insomnia; referral to a sleep specialist, if available, also could be considered.[20,21] Psychotherapies include cognitive-behavioral therapy for insomnia (CBT-I), brief behavioral therapy, stimulus control, relaxation, and sleep restriction.

Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy for Insomnia

Based largely on moderate-quality evidence showing benefit on sleep onset, wake after sleep onset, and sleep efficiency, the American College of Physicians recommends CBT-I as initial therapy for all adults with chronic insomnia.[21] The American College of Physicians panel noted that evidence related to the harms of CBT-I is limited and concluded that CBT-I can be used for long-term treatment of insomnia.

CBT-I consists of a combination of cognitive therapy, behavioral interventions (eg, sleep restriction and stimulus control), and educational interventions (eg, sleep hygiene) to address thoughts and behaviors that interfere with optimal sleep. CBT-I traditionally has been offered one-on-one in the office setting, but is limited by the time required, the need for multiple training sessions, and the availability of trained providers. Telephone- and web-based platforms have shown evidence indicating benefit.[21] Two recent meta-analyses showed that CBT-I delivered via the internet produced clinically significant benefits for 1 year after the end of therapy.[22,23] One of these was restricted to CBT-I delivered in primary care (generally by a non-physician) over 4 to 6 sessions.[23]

Pharmacologic Therapy

Pharmacologic therapy plays a key role in treating chronic insomnia, particularly because not all patients achieve adequate benefits with CBT-I and long-term adherence can be challenging.[20,21] Approved medications include benzodiazepines, nonbenzodiazepine hypnotics, melatonin agonist, doxepin, and orexin receptor antagonists.

Benzodiazepines

Benzodiazepines, such as estazolam, lorazepam, temazepam, and triazolam, bind to several gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA) type A receptor subtypes.[24] Benzodiazepines reduce the time to sleep onset, prolong stage 2 sleep, prolong total sleep time, and might reduce the length of rapid eye movement sleep.[25] Additionally, benzodiazepines have anxiolytic as well as anticonvulsant properties and produce anterograde amnesia. Although tolerance to the sedative effects could develop, next-day performance can be impaired depending on the elimination half-life of the benzodiazepine.[25] Withdrawal and rebound insomnia could occur with abrupt discontinuation.

Nonbenzodiazepine benzodiazepine receptor agonists

Nonbenzodiazepine benzodiazepine receptor agonists are more selective for a specific GABA type 1 receptor subtype and exert less anxiolytic and anticonvulsant effects than benzodiazepines. This class includes eszopiclone, zaleplon, and zolpidem (immediate- and extended-release). Nonbenzodiazepines decrease sleep latency and number of nighttime awakenings and improve sleep duration and sleep quality.[26-31] Headache and dizziness are common adverse events.[25] Low dosages are recommended to reduce the risk of impaired next-day performance.

Melatonin receptor agonist

Ramelteon binds to melatonin receptors in the suprachiasmatic nucleus with higher affinity than melatonin.[32,33] Short-term use of ramelteon is associated with small improvements in sleep onset and total sleep time.[34] The most common adverse effects are somnolence, fatigue, and abnormal dreams.[35]

Orexin receptor antagonists

Orexin receptor antagonists, suvorexant and lemborexant, which block the neuropeptides orexin A and B from binding in the hypothalamus are the newest class of medications for insomnia. Orexin A and B play a key role in promoting wakefulness and regulating the sleep-wake cycle.[36] Somnolence, fatigue, headache, and abnormal dreams are the most common adverse events.[25] Suvorexant and lemborexant have a reduced addictive potential than other FDA-approved medications for insomnia and are classified as schedule IV controlled substances.

Suvorexant

The safety and efficacy of suvorexant were demonstrated in a pooled analysis of 2 identical randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, parallel-group 3-month trials in nongeriatric (age 18 to 64) and geriatric (age ≥65) patients with insomnia.[37,38] At dosages of 15 or 20 mg/d (N = 493) and 30 or 40 mg/d (investigational) (N=770), suvorexant significantly improved most sleep onset and sleep maintenance endpoints compared with placebo (N = 767) beginning with the first treatment.[37] For example, placebo-corrected subjective time to sleep onset was 5.2 to 7.6 minutes and 8.4 to 13.2 minutes shorter with suvorexant 15 or 20 mg/d and 30 or 40 mg/d, respectively, at 3 months in the 2 trials.[37,38] Placebo-corrected subjective total sleep time increased from 10.6 to 19.7 minutes and 22.1 to 25.1 minutes with suvorexant, 15 or 20 mg/d and 30 or 40 mg/d, respectively.[37] Rates of discontinuation because of an adverse event were ≤4.7% for suvorexant and ≤6.0% for placebo.[37]

Lemborexant

Lemborexant has demonstrated safety and efficacy in nongeriatric and geriatric patients with insomnia. In a phase II, dose-ranging study, lemborexant improved both objective and subjective measures of sleep, which were apparent during the first 2 nights of treatment and persisted for the 15 nights of the trial.[39] A phase III trial compared lemborexant, 5 or 10 mg/d, zolpidem extended-release, 6.25 mg/d, and placebo over 1 month in 1008 patients with insomnia.[40] Compared with zolpidem, treatment with both dosages of lemborexant led to significant improvement in latency to persistent sleep, sleep efficiency, and wake-after-sleep onset during the first 2 nights of treatment and continued through the 1 month of the trial. For example, at 1 month patients treated with lemborexant experienced significantly greater reduction in wake-after-sleep onset in the second half of the night with the 5 and 10 mg/d dosages of lemborexant vs zolpidem (–6.7 and –8.0 minutes vs zolpidem, respectively). Similar significant improvements with lemborexant were observed vs placebo. Rates of discontinuation because of an adverse event were 0.4%, 0%, 0.8%, and 0.5% for lemborexant 5 and 10 mg/d, zolpidem, and placebo, respectively.

Guideline recommendations

The most recent guideline on pharmacotherapy for chronic insomnia in adults was developed by the American Academy of Sleep Medicine (AASM) in 2017.[20] The AASM recommendations are based on a systematic review of published literature, including meta-analyses. The AASM panel recognized the critical role of CBT-I because of its favorable benefit-to-risk ratio, but affirmed the need for pharmacotherapy, either alone or in combination with CBT-I, for many patients with chronic insomnia.

TABLE 2. **Recommendations regarding medications for insomnia**[20]

Medication	Recommended Use	
	Sleep Onset	Sleep Maintenance
Benefits outweigh harms		
Ramelteon Zaleplon	✓	
Doxepin Suvorexant		✓
Eszopiclone Temazepam Zolpidem	✓	✓
Benefits approximately equal to harms		
Triazolam	✓	
Diphenhydramine Melatonin	None	None
Harms outweigh benefits		
Tiagabine Trazodone l-Tryptophan Valerian	None	None

Note: Lemborexant is not included because it was approved for use in the United States after publication of the AASM guidelines in 2017.

The AASM panel provided recommendations regarding pharmacotherapy at FDA-approved dosages for sleep onset and/or sleep maintenance (**TABLE 2**).[20] Medications that are relatively short-acting are preferred for patients experiencing difficulty with sleep onset, while longer-acting medications are preferred for those with difficulty maintaining sleep. Lemborexant was not included because it was approved by the FDA after the AASM published their recommendations.

All recommendations were classified as weak, but the AASM panel noted that this reflects the limitations of the evidence as much as the relative benefits and risks of the treatments *per se*. The panel recommended that several agents commonly used for insomnia be avoided, including diphenhydramine, melatonin, tiagabine, trazodone, l-tryptophan, and valerian. Other medications that generally should not be used for chronic insomnia include antidepressants, antipsychotics, and barbiturates. An exception is doxepin at dosages ≤6 mg/d, which is FDA-approved for insomnia. The sedating antidepressants amitriptyline and trazodone should be limited to those with comorbid depression. Recommendations by the AASM panel for the following were not possible because of inadequate data for statistical analysis: estazolam,

flurazepam, gabapentin, oxazepam, paroxetine, quazepam, quetiapine, and trimipramine.

Recommendations regarding the use of medications for insomnia also are included in the Beers Criteria for Potentially Inappropriate Medication Use in Older Adults. The Beers Criteria were developed by the American Geriatrics Society to provide guidance regarding the use of medications in older adults based on a systematic review of clinical trials, observational studies, and meta-analyses involving adults age ≥65. According to the 2019 Beers Criteria,[41] several medication classes commonly used to treat insomnia should be avoided in older adults, often because of their anticholinergic properties, prolonged sedation, and/or risk of falls. These include first-generation antihistamines, some antidepressants, barbiturates, short- and long-acting benzodiazepines, benzodiazepine receptor agonists, and first- and second-generation antipsychotics. Lemborexant and suvorexant were not included in the list, and doxepin ≤6 mg/d was deemed acceptable.

Risk of Falls

The risk of falls, and the associated morbidity and mortality, is an important consideration when selecting a hypnotic agent for insomnia, especially in older adults. However, several investigations and meta-analyses provide conflicting conclusions.[42-49] A 2005 retrospective analysis of a database of nursing home residents (N = 34,163) found that hypnotic use did not predict falls (adjusted odds ratio [OR]: 1.13; 95% confidence interval [CI]: 0.98 to 1.30), but that the presence of insomnia did (adjusted OR: 1.52; 95% CI: 1.38 to 1.66). Results were not categorized by type of hypnotic, however.

A recent investigation of 331 nursing home residents found a significantly increased risk of falls with regular use of non-benzodiazepine benzodiazepine receptor agonists, particularly in adults age ≥85, but not with benzodiazepines, antidepressants, or antipsychotics.[50] A systematic review and meta-analysis involving 1.1 million patients found that the risk of fractures in patients treated with zolpidem was nearly twice that of other hypnotics, suggesting a greater risk of falls.[48] A prospective analysis involving 6882 community-dwelling older adults followed for 2 years showed that insomnia symptoms and use of prescription sleep medications independently predicted falls.[51]

CASE SCENARIO (CONTINUED)

Cognitive-behavioral therapy for insomnia is recommended as initial therapy for this woman, as well as all adults with chronic insomnia. If CBT-I does not provide adequate benefit or she is unable to adhere long term, pharmacologic therapy is recommended. Since sleep maintenance is her primary difficulty, medications recommended by the AASM are: doxepin (dose ≤6 mg/d), eszopiclone, suvorexant, temazepam, and zolpidem. Lemborexant, the other orexin receptor antagonist recently approved by the FDA, would also be an option. According to the Beers Criteria, doxepin ≤6mg/d is deemed acceptable, while lemoborexant and suvorexant were not included in the list of medications to avoid.

SUMMARY

Insomnia is common among US adults and, when chronic, increases the risk of other disorders, such as incident and recurring depression and cardiovascular diseases, and diminishes functioning and quality of life. The diagnosis is based primarily on a detailed sleep history and includes assessment of comorbidities. Cognitive-behavioral therapy is first line for patients with insomnia. A variety of medication classes have been used to treat patients with insomnia, but few, mostly newer agents, are recommended in current guidelines because of limited efficacy and/or safety concerns, particularly in older adults. Individualizing treatment is important. ●

REFERENCES

1. *International Classification of Sleep Disorders.* 3rd ed. Darien, IL: American Academy of Sleep Medicine; 2014.
2. Albrecht JS, Wickwire EM, Vadlamani A, Scharf SM, Tom SE. Trends in insomnia diagnosis and treatment among Medicare beneficiaries, 2006-2013. *Am J Geriatr Psychiatry.* 2019;27(3):301-309.
3. Roth T, Coulouvrat C, Hajak G, et al. Prevalence and perceived health associated with insomnia based on DSM-IV-TR; International Statistical Classification of Diseases and Related Health Problems, Tenth Revision; and Research Diagnostic Criteria/International Classification of Sleep Disorders, Second Edition criteria: results from the America Insomnia Survey. *Biol Psychiatry.* 2011;69(6):592-600.
4. Ford DE, Kamerow DB. Epidemiologic study of sleep disturbances and psychiatric disorders. An opportunity for prevention? *JAMA.* 1989;262(11):1479-1484.
5. Ohayon MM, Roth T. Place of chronic insomnia in the course of depressive and anxiety disorders. *J Psychiatr Res.* 2003;37(1):9-15.
6. Sorensen L, Jensen MSA, Rathleff MS, Holden S. Comorbid insomnia, psychological symptoms and widespread pain among patients suffering from musculoskeletal pain in general practice: a cross-sectional study. *BMJ Open.* 2019;9(6):e031971.
7. Bragantini D, Sivertsen B, Gehrman P, Lydersen S, Guzey IC. Differences in anxiety levels among symptoms of insomnia. The HUNT study. *Sleep Health.* 2019;5(4):370-375.
8. Goel NJ, Sadeh-Sharvit S, Trockel M, et al. Depression and anxiety mediate the relationship between insomnia and eating disorders in college women. *J Am Coll Health.* 2020:1-6.
9. Teo JS, Briffa NK, Devine A, Dhaliwal SS, Prince RL. Do sleep problems or urinary incontinence predict falls in elderly women? *Aust J Physiother.* 2006;52(1):19-24.
10. Stone KL, Ensrud KE, Ancoli-Israel S. Sleep, insomnia and falls in elderly patients. *Sleep Med.* 2008;9(Suppl 1):S18-S22.
11. Stone KL, Ancoli-Israel S, Blackwell T, et al. Actigraphy-measured sleep characteristics and risk of falls in older women. *Arch Intern Med.* 2008;168(16):1768-1775.
12. Cauley JA, Hovey KM, Stone KL, et al. Characteristics of self-reported sleep and the risk of falls and fractures: The Women's Health Initiative (WHI). *J Bone Miner Res.* 2019;34(3):464-474.
13. Zheng B, Yu C, Lv J, et al. Insomnia symptoms and risk of cardiovascular diseases among 0.5 million adults: a 10-year cohort. *Neurology.* 2019;93(23):e2110-e2120.
14. Javaheri S, Redline S. Insomnia and risk of cardiovascular disease. *Chest.* 2017;152(2):435-444.
15. Costemale-Lacoste JF, Asmar KE, Rigal A, et al. Severe insomnia is associated with metabolic syndrome in women over 50 years with major depression treated in psychiatry settings: a METADAP report. *J Affect Disord.* 2020;264:513-518.
16. Schutte-Rodin S, Broch L, Buysse D, Dorsey C, Sateia M. Clinical guideline for the evaluation and management of chronic insomnia in adults. *J Clin Sleep Med.* 2008;4(5):487-504.
17. Anderson KN. Insomnia and cognitive behavioural therapy-how to assess your patient and why it should be a standard part of care. *J Thorac Dis.* 2018;10(Suppl 1):S94-S102.
18. Chesson A Jr, Hartse K, Anderson WM, et al. Practice parameters for the evaluation of chronic insomnia. An American Academy of Sleep Medicine report. Standards of Practice Committee of the American Academy of Sleep Medicine. *Sleep.* 2000;23(2):237-241.

19. NIH State-of-the-Science Conference Statement on manifestations and management of chronic insomnia in adults. *NIH Consens State Sci Statements.* 2005;22(2):1-30.
20. Sateia MJ, Buysse DJ, Krystal AD, Neubauer DN, Heald JL. Clinical Practice Guideline for the Pharmacologic Treatment of Chronic Insomnia in Adults: An American Academy of Sleep Medicine Clinical Practice Guideline. *J Clin Sleep Med.* 2017;13(2):307-349.
21. Qaseem A, Kansagara D, Forciea MA, Cooke M, Denberg TD. Management of Chronic Insomnia Disorder in Adults: A Clinical Practice Guideline From the American College of Physicians. *Ann Intern Med.* 2016;165(2):125-133.
22. van der Zweerde T, Bisdounis L, Kyle SD, Lancee J, van Straten A. Cognitive behavioral therapy for insomnia: a meta-analysis of long-term effects in controlled studies. *Sleep Med Rev.* 2019;48:101208.
23. Davidson JR, Dickson C, Han H. Cognitive behavioural treatment for insomnia in primary care: a systematic review of sleep outcomes. *Br J Gen Pract.* 2019;69(686):e657-e664.
24. Lieberman JA. Update on the safety considerations in the management of insomnia with hypnotics: incorporating modified-release formulations into primary care. *Prim Care Companion J Clin Psychiatry.* 2007;9(1):25-31.
25. Drugs for chronic insomnia. *Med Lett Drugs Ther.* 2018;60(1562):201-205.
26. Wilt TJ, MacDonald R, Brasure M, et al. Pharmacologic treatment of insomnia disorder: an evidence report for a clinical practice guideline by the American College of Physicians. *Ann Intern Med.* 2016;165(2):103-112.
27. Huedo-Medina TB, Kirsch I, Middlemass J, Klonizakis M, Siriwardena AN. Effectiveness of non-benzodiazepine hypnotics in treatment of adult insomnia: meta-analysis of data submitted to the Food and Drug Administration. *BMJ.* 2012;345:e8343.
28. Krystal AD. A compendium of placebo-controlled trials of the risks/benefits of pharmacological treatments for insomnia: the empirical basis for U.S. clinical practice. *Sleep Med Rev.* 2009;13(4):265-274.
29. Buscemi N, Vandermeer B, Friesen C, et al. The efficacy and safety of drug treatments for chronic insomnia in adults: a meta-analysis of RCTs. *J Gen Intern Med.* 2007;22(9):1335-1350.
30. Holbrook AM, Crowther R, Lotter A, Cheng C, King D. Meta-analysis of benzodiazepine use in the treatment of insomnia. *CMAJ.* 2000;162(2):225-233.
31. Nowell PD, Mazumdar S, Buysse DJ, Dew MA, Reynolds CF 3rd, Kupfer DJ. Benzodiazepines and zolpidem for chronic insomnia: a meta-analysis of treatment efficacy. *JAMA.* 1997;278(24):2170-2177.
32. Turek FW, Gillette MU. Melatonin, sleep, and circadian rhythms: rationale for development of specific melatonin agonists. *Sleep Med.* 2004;5(6):523-532.
33. Kato K, Hirai K, Nishiyama K, et al. Neurochemical properties of ramelteon (TAK-375), a selective MT1/MT2 receptor agonist. *Neuropharmacology.* 2005;48(2):301-310.
34. Kuriyama A, Honda M, Hayashino Y. Ramelteon for the treatment of insomnia in adults: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Sleep Med.* 2014;15(4):385-392.
35. Kuriyama A, Tabata H. Suvorexant for the treatment of primary insomnia: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Sleep Med Rev.* 2017;35:1-7.
36. Mieda M, Sakurai T. Overview of orexin/hypocretin system. *Prog Brain Res.* 2012;198:5-14.
37. Herring WJ, Connor KM, Ivgy-May N, et al. Suvorexant in patients with insomnia: results from two 3-month randomized controlled clinical trials. *Biol Psychiatry.* 2016;79(2):136-148.
38. Herring WJ, Connor KM, Snyder E, et al. Suvorexant in patients with insomnia: pooled analyses of three-month data from phase-3 randomized controlled clinical trials. *J Clin Sleep Med.* 2016;12(9):1215-1225.
39. Murphy P, Moline M, Mayleben D, et al. Lemborexant, a dual orexin receptor antagonist (DORA) for the treatment of insomnia disorder: results from a Bayesian, adaptive, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study. *J Clin Sleep Med.* 2017;13(11):1289-1299.
40. Rosenberg R, Murphy P, Zammit G, et al. Comparison of lemborexant with placebo and zolpidem tartrate extended release for the treatment of older adults with insomnia disorder: a phase 3 randomized clinical trial. *JAMA Netw Open.* 2019;2(12):e1918254.
41. Fick DM, Semla TP, Steinman M, et al. American Geriatrics Society 2019 Updated AGS Beers Criteria(R) for Potentially Inappropriate Medication Use in Older Adults. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 2019;67(4):674-694.
42. Avidan AY, Fries BE, James ML, Szafara KL, Wright GT, Chervin RD. Insomnia and hypnotic use, recorded in the minimum data set, as predictors of falls and hip fractures in Michigan nursing homes. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 2005;53(6):955-962.
43. Lai SW, Chang-Ou KC, Lin CL, Liao KF. Case-control study examining the association between hip fracture and zaleplon use in older adults. *Postgrad Med J.* 2019;95(1122):233-234.
44. Ramcharran D, Qiu H, Schuemie MJ, Ryan PB. Atypical antipsychotics and the risk of falls and fractures among older adults: An emulation analysis and an evaluation of additional confounding control strategies. *J Clin Psychopharmacol.* 2017;37(2):162-168.
45. Nishtala PS, Chyou TY. Zopiclone use and risk of fractures in older people: population-based study. *J Am Med Dir Assoc.* 2017;18(4):368.e361-368.e368.
46. Donnelly K, Bracchi R, Hewitt J, Routledge PA, Carter B. Benzodiazepines, Z-drugs and the risk of hip fracture: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *PLoS One.* 2017;12(4):e0174730.
47. Tom SE, Wickwire EM, Park Y, Albrecht JS. Nonbenzodiazepine sedative hypnotics and risk of fall-related injury. *Sleep.* 2016;39(5):1009-1014.
48. Park SM, Ryu J, Lee DR, Shin D, Yun JM, Lee J. Zolpidem use and risk of fractures: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Osteoporos Int.* 2016;27(10):2935-2944.
49. Frisher M, Gibbons N, Bashford J, Chapman S, Weich S. Melatonin, hypnotics and their association with fracture: a matched cohort study. *Age Ageing.* 2016;45(6):801-806.
50. Westerlind B, Ostgren CJ, Molstad S, Midlov P, Hagg S. Use of non-benzodiazepine hypnotics is associated with falls in nursing home residents: a longitudinal cohort study. *Aging Clin Exp Res.* 2019;31(8):1087-1095.
51. Chen TY, Lee S, Buxton OM. A greater extent of insomnia symptoms and physician-recommended sleep medication use predict fall risk in community-dwelling older adults. *Sleep.* 2017;40(11).

Overweight: The Overlooked Risk Factor

Robert F. Kushner, MD; Craig Primack, MD, FACP, FAAP, FOMA

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

At the conclusion of this activity, the family physician should be able to:

- Describe the epidemiology of overweight and obesity in the United States.
- Describe the disease burden associated with being overweight (body mass index 25-30 kg/m^2) and how to broach the topic of weight management with patients.
- Differentiate the safety and efficacy of 2 nonprocedural device treatments for people with overweight.

INTRODUCTION

Trends in body weight

Thirty percent. That's the estimated projected prevalence of adults with overweight in the United States in 2030.[1] Overweight, also called pre-obesity, is defined as having a body mass index (BMI) from 25.0 to <30.0 kg/m^2. Thirty percent is actually a reduction from the 33.1% of US adults who had overweight in 1988-1994 and the 31.6% in 2015-2016. The unfortunate reason for the continued projected decline in the prevalence of adults with overweight is their transition into the obesity classification. Without comprehensive treatment, adults with overweight continue to gain weight, moving steadily into the obesity (BMI 30-39.9 kg/m^2) and severe obesity (BMI ≥40 kg/m^2) categories.[2,3] One of the primary reasons for this transition lies in our dietary habits, eg, overconsumption of highly processed, energy-dense, and palatable foods and beverages in place of naturally fiber-rich foods, and reduced physical activity.[4]

Comparing 1960-1962 with 2015-2016, the mean BMI among US adults increased from 25.1 kg/m^2 to 29.1 kg/m^2 in men and from 24.9 kg/m^2 to 29.6 kg/m^2 in women.[2,5] In fact, despite an increase in mean height of <1 inch in both men and women, the mean body weight among US adults rose sharply, rising from 166.3 pounds in 1960-1962 to 197.9 pounds in 2015-2016 in men and from 140.2 pounds to 170.5 pounds in women.[2,5] By 2030, estimates are that 1 in 2 US adults (48.9%) will have obesity, nearly double the prevalence of 25.7% in 1988-1994.[1,3] Similar trends are observed in youth, particularly those age 5 to 19 years, as the prevalence of obesity increased from 13.9% in 1999-2000 to 18.5% in 2015-2016.[6]

Targeting people with overweight

Among the key trends noted above, one seems to be especially important. That is, people in the overweight category are more likely now than 30 years ago to continue to gain weight and develop obesity. These trends make it clear that early intervention efforts are needed, at lower BMI ranges before patients cross into the obesity classification. Put differently, patients who have overweight represent an important group for targeted treatment to prevent progression to obesity. In fact, patients who are classified as having a healthy weight, ie, BMI from 20 to <25 kg/m^2, are also an important target for preventive measures, because evidence indicates that many of the chronic diseases observed in people with obesity begin to emerge in people who have a healthy weight.

Understanding consequences of excess body weight

Beyond the enormous economic consequences of over-

Robert F. Kushner, MD, Professor of Medicine and Medical Education, Northwestern University Feinberg School of Medicine, Division of Endocrinology, Chicago, IL.

Craig Primack, MD, FACP, FAAP, FOMA, Diplomate, American Board of Obesity Medicine, President, Obesity Medicine Association, Scottsdale Weight Loss Center, Scottsdale, AZ.

DISCLOSURES

Dr. Kushner discloses that he serves on the advisory board for Novo Nordisk and WW (formerly Weight Watchers).

Dr. Primack discloses that he serves as a consultant for Nestle Nutrition, Contrave, on the advisory board for Phenomix and Gelesis, and as a speaker for Novo Nordisk. He also owns stock in Vivus.

Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, editorial support, discloses he has no real or apparent conflicts of interests to report. Additional PCEC staff report no conflicts of interest.

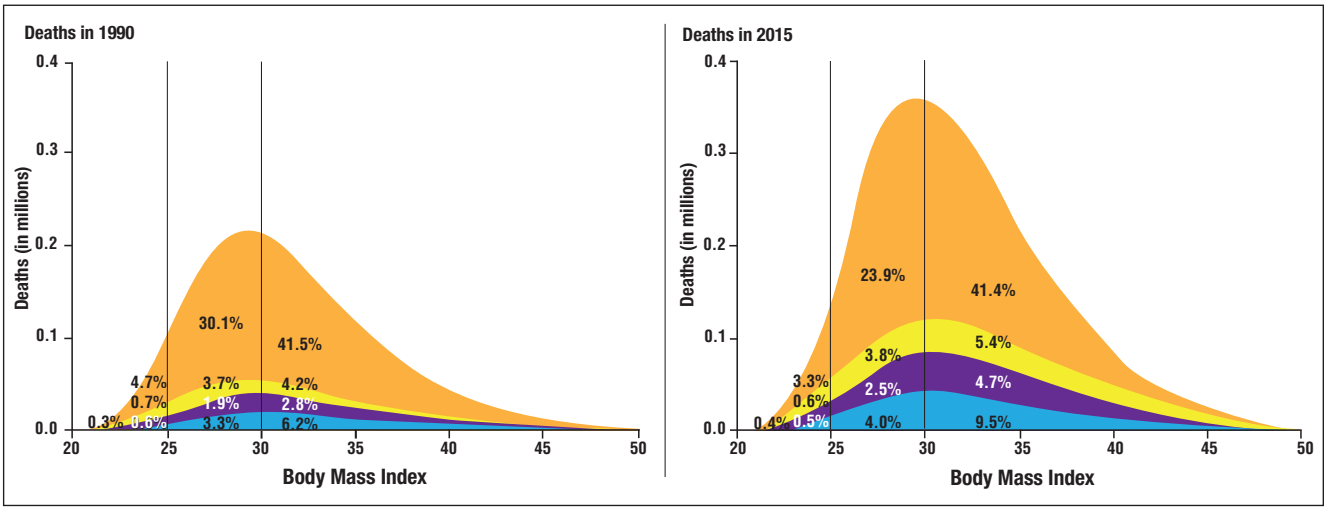
ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Editorial support was provided by Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, at the Primary Care Education Consortium (PCEC).

SPONSORSHIP

This activity is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and the Primary Care Metabolic Group, and supported by funding from Gelesis.

FIGURE 1. **Global deaths by body mass index**



Notes: Number of global deaths (millions) in 1990 (left) and 2015 (right). The 2 vertical lines mark the BMI thresholds for overweight and obesity. The percentages indicate the proportion of the total number of deaths that were contributed by diabetes mellitus (blue), chronic kidney disease (purple), cancers (light orange), and cardiovascular diseases (dark orange).

weight and obesity,[7,8] multiple chronic medical conditions are associated with weight gain and excess adiposity. These include dyslipidemia, type 2 diabetes mellitus, hypertension, coronary heart disease, stroke, gallbladder disease, gastroesophageal reflux disease, respiratory problems, sleep apnea, osteoarthritis, several cancers, urinary incontinence, and depression, as well as higher mortality rates and, most recently observed, an increased risk of complications from COVID-19.[9-19] Many of these chronic comorbidities are observed in children and adolescents with obesity.[20]

DISEASE BURDEN

BMI cutoff of 25 kg/m^2

The upper limit of a healthy BMI, ie, 25 kg/m^2, was established decades ago and reaffirmed in 1995 by the Dietary Guidelines Advisory Committee. This cutoff was based on epidemiological data showing that mortality increased significantly with a BMI >25 kg/m^2.[21,22] In establishing this cutoff, less consideration was given to the evidence showing that the incidence of diabetes, hypertension, and coronary heart disease began to increase well below a BMI of 25 kg/m^2.[23-28]

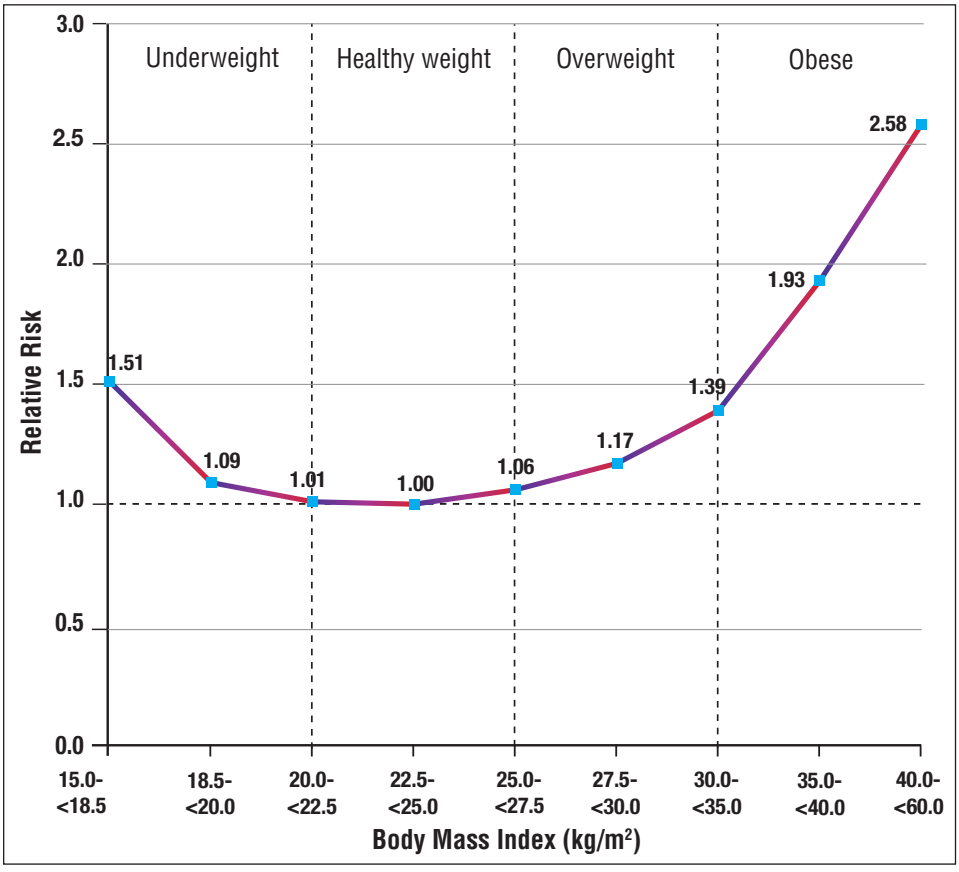
A factor contributing to the committee's decision was that designating a BMI cutoff lower than 25 kg/m^2 for the upper limit of healthy weight (and the lower limit of overweight) would have labeled >50% of US adults as having unhealthy weight. Moreover, the cutoff of 25 kg/m^2 was consistent with then-current recommendations of the American Institute of Nutrition[29] and the World Health Organization.[30]

Mortality burden in overweight

A recent analysis by the Global Burden of Disease (GBD) Obesity Collaborators reinforces that the mortality burden is not restricted to people with obesity.[15] The analysis included data from 68.5 million children and adults in 195 countries between 1980 and 2015. In 2015, 4.0 million weight-related deaths occurred in people with a BMI ≥25 kg/m^2; 39% of these deaths occurred in people with a BMI <30 kg/m^2 (**FIGURE 1**). In people with BMI-related death due to diabetes, for example, 4.5% occurred at a BMI <30 kg/m^2. Similar trends in BMI-related disability were observed.

Details regarding the association of BMI with mortality were provided by a similar analysis by the GBD BMI Mortality Collaborators.[31] The analysis was restricted to never-smokers and excluded preexisting disease and the first 5 years of follow-up. Data involving 1.42 million adults from North America showed that BMI was nonlinearly associated with all-cause mortality, with the overall nadir at BMI from 20.0 kg/m^2 to <25.0 kg/m^2 (**FIGURE 2**). The nadir was age dependent, identified at BMI 22 kg/m^2 for age 35-49 years, BMI 23 kg/m^2 for age 50-69 years, and BMI 24 kg/m^2 for age 70-89 years. These findings confirm the mortality risk in people with overweight and suggest that targeting a BMI well below the cutoff of 25 kg/m^2 may be advisable, particularly in younger adults. These findings also confirm an earlier investigation showing that the relative risk of all-cause and cardiovascular death associated with greater body weight is higher among younger adults than older adults.[32]

FIGURE 2. **Relative risk of all-cause mortality by BMI category in North America[31]***



Abbreviation: BMI, body mass index.

*BMI category from 22.5 to <25.0 kg/m² is set as the reference category. Data are in never-smokers, excluding people with chronic disease at baseline and 5 years of follow-up in geographic regions with >1 million participants.

The GBD BMI Mortality Collaborators analysis also showed that, compared with BMI from 22.5 to <25.0, increasing BMI was strongly positively related to death due to coronary heart disease (hazard ratio [HR] 1.42 per 5 kg/m² increase in BMI), stroke (HR 1.42 per 5 kg/m²), and respiratory disease (HR 1.38 per 5 kg/m²), and moderately positively related to cancer mortality (HR 1.19 per 5 kg/m²).[31] Another analysis showed a reduction in the expected age at death of 0.8 to 1.0 year in a 40-year-old, never-smoker with underweight.[14]

SCREENING

The 2012 guidelines developed by the American Heart Association/American College of Cardiology/The Obesity Society underscore the importance of measuring height and weight and calculating BMI at annual visits or more frequently for all patients.[33] For patients found to have overweight or obesity, measuring the waist circumference at annual visits or more frequently is also recommended. North American waist circumference cutpoints to identify high-risk patients are >40 inches for males and >35 inches for females.[33]

Recently, a task force of The Obesity Society assessed available evidence and concluded that weight history is an essential component of the medical history for patients presenting with overweight or obesity.[34] The weight history should assess the patient's life stage at which unhealthy weight occurred, duration of exposure to obesity, and maximum BMI, as each factor may help predict risk for developing many obesity-related comorbidities. As is often used for ascertaining a patient's chief complaint and history of present illness, the mnemonic "OPQRST" (onset, precipitating events, quality of life, remedy, setting, and temporal pattern) can be used to form an understanding of how and when a patient gained weight, which management efforts have been attempted, and the effect of unhealthy weight on the patient's health and well-being.

Having the conversation about weight

Family physicians are well positioned to address overweight with their patients, in part because patients want and expect weight-loss guidance from their health care providers. Nonetheless, as family physicians prepare for and have these conversations with their patients, it is important to realize that most patients with excess weight, particularly those with obesity, have often been stigmatized as a result of having the disease, including by physicians and other health care providers.[35-37] Consequently, treating the patient with respect and using appropriate language are important. Words such as overweight, unhealthy or excess weight, and increased BMI should be used instead of heaviness, obesity, or excess fat.[38,39]

The conversation about weight should begin by asking for the patient's permission to talk about his or her weight.

If the patient is not interested or ready, acknowledge the importance of discussing weight, but defer the discussion until a future visit. When the patient is ready for the discussion, start with an empathetic statement followed by listening, which can be helpful to avoid the patient feeling embarrassed and to build a trusting relationship. This exchange can be augmented by using a shared decision-making model to find a weight management plan the patient is willing and able to adopt. Inquiring about the patient's experience with weight loss is helpful to establish realistic expectations and inform the treatment plan. These and other suggestions are embodied in the FRAMES model for communicating with patients, which can be found in a discussion guide developed by the STOP Obesity Alliance (http://whyweightguide.org/docs/STOP-Provider-Discussion-Tool.pdf).

TREATMENT OPTIONS FOR OVERWEIGHT

Lifestyle management

Lifestyle management consisting of a calorie-controlled healthy diet and engagement in daily physical activity is a foundational treatment recommendation for weight loss[33] and improved health. After 1 year of treatment, the Look AHEAD trial showed a reduction in mean body weight of 8.6%, which resulted in improved glycemic control, improved lipid profile, and a reduced requirement for medications for diabetes, dyslipidemia, and hypertension.[40] Additional benefits such as improved symptoms of depression and sleep apnea also were observed.[41,42]

A recent analysis of data from the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey showed that the proportion of overall participants (N=48,026) who had attempted to lose weight increased from 34.3% in 1999-2000 to 42.2% in 2015-2016.[43] The most commonly reported weight-loss strategies were reduced food consumption, exercise, and frequent water intake, used by 31.9%, 31.5%, and 26.3%, respectively, in 2015-2016.

Unfortunately, short- and long-term achievement of 5% to 10% weight loss with lifestyle management alone is difficult.[44-48] The inclusion of behavioral therapy results in modest additional health benefits, with evidence of a dose-response effect with higher intensity interventions resulting in greater improvement.[49,50]

Pharmacologic therapy

With the recent withdrawal of lorcaserin from the US market due to cancer concerns, there are now 4 medications approved for long-term use.[33] Liraglutide, naltrexone/bupropion extended-release, phentermine/topiramate extended-release, and orlistat are approved for weight loss and weight maintenance in patients with obesity or overweight (BMI ≥27 kg/m^2 with ≥1 weight-related comorbidity). In randomized controlled trials, medications currently approved for long-term weight loss have yielded an average weight loss ranging from approximately 3% to 9% relative to placebo at 1 year, and are generally associated with improvements in blood glucose, lipids, and blood pressure.[51]

Although beneficial, use of medications approved for long-term weight loss is low, with 1% to 2% of eligible patients receiving weight-loss medication.[52,53] Several factors may underlie the low prescription rates, including concern about safety and long-term efficacy, failure to recognize obesity as a disease, lack of training, and limited insurance coverage. Furthermore, their approved indications do not include patients with BMI ranging from 25 kg/m^2 to <30 kg/m^2 without comorbidities. Recent investigations show that less than one-quarter of prescribers account for nearly all prescriptions for these medications.[52,53] Suboptimal adherence also appears to contribute. One real-world analysis (N=26,522) showed that 6-month persistence rates ranged from 16% to 42%, while another real-world analysis (N=2.2 million) showed the 4-month and 1-year persistence rates were 52% and 34%, respectively.[53,54] Modest weight reduction may also contribute to the low use and suboptimal persistence, as weight loss over 3 to 6 months is often <5%.[55-58]

Devices

Two nonprocedural devices are approved by the US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for weight management and may fill a treatment gap, particularly in patients with overweight. One is an ingested, transient, space-occupying device, or oral superabsorbent hydrogel, and the other an oral, removable, palatal space-occupying device. Neither of these devices requires a procedure for use.

Nonsystemic, oral superabsorbent hydrogel

The nonsystemic, oral superabsorbent hydrogel (Plenity™) is indicated for use in conjunction with diet and exercise to aid in weight management in adults with overweight and obesity with a BMI from 25 kg/m^2 to 40 kg/m^2.[59] The availability of Plenity in the US has been delayed until 2021 due to the COVID-19 pandemic.

The oral hydrogel product, which is technically considered a device, is delivered in a capsule taken by mouth that consists of 2 building blocks, cellulose and citric acid.[59] Each capsule (1 dose=3 capsules) contains thousands of salt grain-size particles, which can hydrate up to 100 times their original weight. After oral ingestion with water, each capsule disintegrates in the stomach and releases the particles, which are then hydrated. The hydrated gel particles form a 3-dimensional matrix with viscoelastic properties similar

to solid ingested vegetables and superior to common processed functional fiber supplements such as psyllium.[60] The hydrogel matrix occupies about one-quarter of the average stomach volume, thereby promoting satiety and fullness. The matrix passes through the stomach and small intestine before breaking down in the colon, where the water is released and reabsorbed by the body. The particles are not absorbed and are eliminated in the feces. Consequently, the product has no nutritional or caloric value.

The safety and efficacy of the oral superabsorbent hydrogel product were investigated in a 24-week multicenter, randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled trial in adults with BMI ≥27 kg/m^2 and ≤40 kg/m^2 and fasting plasma glucose (FPG) ≥90 mg/dL and ≤145 mg/dL (N=436).[61] At baseline, the mean BMIs were 33.5 kg/m^2 and 34.1 kg/m^2 in the oral hydrogel and placebo groups, respectively, with 11.7% and 9.9% classified as overweight. Weight loss ≥5% was achieved by 59% vs 42% of patients, respectively, while weight loss ≥10% was achieved by 27% vs 15%, respectively. Patients treated with the oral superabsorbent hydrogel lost 6.4% body weight compared with 4.4% with placebo (*P*=.0007). In patients with FPG ≥100 mg/dL or drug-naïve type 2 diabetes mellitus at baseline, the mean percentage decrease in body weight was 8.1% with the oral hydrogel and 5.6% for placebo (*P*=NS).

The overall incidence of adverse events (AEs) in the oral superabsorbent hydrogel treatment group was no different from placebo. An AE probably or possibly related to treatment occurred in 39.5% of the oral hydrogel group and 30.3% of the placebo group; most were mild. No serious AEs were reported with the oral superabsorbent hydrogel product. The most common gastrointestinal AEs probably or possibly related to treatment in the oral superabsorbent hydrogel vs placebo groups were diarrhea (10.3% vs 7.6%), abdominal distension (10.8% vs 5.7%), infrequent bowel movements (9.0% vs 4.7%), flatulence (8.5% vs 4.7%), constipation (4.5% vs 4.7%), nausea (3.6% vs 3.8%), and abdominal pain (4.9% vs 2.8%).

Extended treatment was offered to the last 52 patients of the study who lost ≥3% body weight over the 24 weeks. These patients were treated for an additional 24 weeks, with all continuing patients receiving the oral superabsorbent hydrogel. Over weeks 25 to 48, patients in the oral hydrogel–oral hydrogel group lost an additional 0.5% of body weight (7.6% from baseline to week 48), while patients in the placebo–oral hydrogel group lost an additional 2.3% of body weight (9.4% from baseline to week 48). The safety results over weeks 25 to 48 were similar to weeks 0 to 24.

Oral, removable, palatal space-occupying device

The sensor monitored alimentary restriction therapy (SMART) device was approved by the FDA in 2016 as a class II device for weight management or weight loss.[62] It is an oral, removable, upper palatal space-occupying device that is worn during meals to limit bite size and slow the intake of food, thereby reducing the amount of food that is consumed. The device is indicated for people with BMI from 27 kg/m^2 to 35 kg/m^2 in conjunction with behavioral modification instruction.[63] A heat sensor in the device automatically records usage; the data can be uploaded to a secure website for adherence monitoring. The device is made from a mold of the patient's upper oral cavity by a trained health care provider using a mold kit included with the device.

The safety and efficacy of the oral palatal device were assessed in a 16-week, prospective, single-arm, nonrandomized multicenter trial in combination with a video-delivered lifestyle program in adults with BMI 27 kg/m^2 to <35 kg/m^2.[64] Mean weight loss was 2.1% among the 76 intent-to-treat (ITT) subjects and 2.9% among the 40 per-protocol (PP) subjects. PP subjects were required to use the device ≥7 times per week for 14 of 16 weeks, have an overall device usage rate ≥33%, and complete the trial. Weight loss ≥5% at 16 weeks was achieved by 19.7% of the ITT subjects and 30.0% of the PP subjects. Two ITT subjects reported mild/moderate device-related AEs (1 a hard palate abrasion and 2 tongue lacerations).

SUMMARY

While treatment of people with unhealthy weight has typically focused on patients with obesity, evidence indicates that the detrimental effects of excess weight on morbidity and mortality begin at lower BMI categories. Therefore, identifying at-risk patients who have overweight (BMI from 25.0 to <30.0 kg/m^2) and initiating treatment earlier may interrupt the progression toward further weight gain and the development of obesity-related comorbidities. The first step in treatment is broaching the topic of weight with the patient in an empathic and respectful manner. All patients should be provided guidance on following a calorie-controlled healthy diet and engaging in daily physical activity. For some patients, prescription of a medication approved for weight loss may be warranted after reviewing the risks and benefits of the available agents. With the FDA clearance of 2 nonprocedural devices, we now have additional therapeutic options for patients who have a lower BMI, with evidence of modest weight loss and good patient tolerability. ●

REFERENCES

1. Ward ZJ, Bleich SN, Cradock AL, et al. Projected U.S. state-level prevalence of adult obesity and severe obesity. *N Engl J Med.* 2019;381(25):2440-2450.
2. Fryar CD, Kruszon-Moran D, Gu Q, Ogden CL. Mean body weight, height, waist circumference, and body mass index among adults: United States, 1999-2000 through 2015-2016. *Natl Health Stat Report.* 2018(122):1-16.
3. Fryar CD, Carroll MD, Ogden CL. Prevalence of overweight, obesity, and severe obesity among adults aged 20 and over: United States, 1960-1962 through 2015-2016. 2018. https://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/hestat/obesity_adult_15_16/obesity_adult_15_16.pdf. Accessed April 8, 2020.

4. US Department of Health and Human Services and US Department of Agriculture. *2015-2020 Dietary Guidelines for Americans*. 8th edition. 2015. https://health.gov/dietaryguidelines/2015/resources/2015-2020_Dietary_Guidelines.pdf. Accessed July 30, 2019.
5. Ogden CL, Fryar CD, Carroll MD, Flegal KM. Mean body weight, height, and body mass index, United States 1960-2002. *Adv Data*. 2004(347):1-17.
6. Hales CM, Carroll MD, Fryar CD, Ogden CL. Prevalence of obesity among adults and youth: United States, 2015-2016. *NCHS Data Brief*. 2017(288):1-8.
7. Biener A, Cawley J, Meyerhoefer C. The impact of obesity on medical care costs and labor market outcomes in the US. *Clin Chem*. 2018;64(1):108-117.
8. Amiri S, Behnezhad S. Body mass index and risk of sick leave: a systematic review and meta-analysis. *Clin Obes*. 2019;9(6):e12334.
9. Mokdad AH, Ford ES, Bowman BA, et al. Prevalence of obesity, diabetes, and obesity-related health risk factors, 2001. *JAMA*. 2003;289(1):76-79.
10. Pausova Z, Gossard F, Gaudet D, et al. Heritability estimates of obesity measures in siblings with and without hypertension. *Hypertension*. 2001;38(1):41-47.
11. Feng J, Chen Q, Yu F, et al. Body mass index and risk of rheumatoid arthritis: a meta-analysis of observational studies. *Medicine (Baltimore)*. 2016;95(8):e2859.
12. Bhaskaran K, Douglas I, Forbes H, dos-Santos-Silva I, Leon DA, Smeeth L. Body-mass index and risk of 22 specific cancers: a population-based cohort study of 5.24 million UK adults. *Lancet*. 2014;384(9945):755-765.
13. Calle EE, Rodriguez C, Walker-Thurmond K, Thun MJ. Overweight, obesity, and mortality from cancer in a prospectively studied cohort of US adults. *N Engl J Med*. 2003;348(17):1625-1638.
14. Bhaskaran K, Dos-Santos-Silva I, Leon DA, Douglas IJ, Smeeth L. Association of BMI with overall and cause-specific mortality: a population-based cohort study of 3.6 million adults in the UK. *Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol*. 2018;6(12):944-953.
15. Afshin A, Forouzanfar MH, Reitsma MB, et al. Health effects of overweight and obesity in 195 countries over 25 years. *N Engl J Med*. 2017;377(1):13-27.
16. Steele CB, Thomas CC, Henley SJ, et al. Vital signs: trends in incidence of cancers associated with overweight and obesity - United States, 2005-2014. *MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep*. 2017;66(39):1052-1058.
17. Xia X, Chen W, Li J, et al. Body mass index and risk of breast cancer: a nonlinear dose-response meta-analysis of prospective studies. *Sci Rep*. 2014;4:7480.
18. Rajan TM, Menon V. Psychiatric disorders and obesity: a review of association studies. *J Postgrad Med*. 2017;63(3):182-190.
19. Richardson S, Hirsch JS, Narasimhan M, et al. Presenting characteristics, comorbidities, and outcomes among 5700 patients hospitalized with COVID-19 in the New York City area. *JAMA*. 2020;323(20):2052-2059.
20. Sharma V, Coleman S, Nixon J, et al. A systematic review and meta-analysis estimating the population prevalence of comorbidities in children and adolescents aged 5 to 18 years. *Obes Rev*. 2019;20(10):1341-1349.
21. Manson JE, Willett WC, Stampfer MJ, et al. Body weight and mortality among women. *N Engl J Med*. 1995;333(11):677-685.
22. Lee IM, Paffenbarger RS, Jr. Change in body weight and longevity. *JAMA*. 1992;268(15):2045-2049.
23. Willett WC, Manson JE, Stampfer MJ, et al. Weight, weight change, and coronary heart disease in women. Risk within the 'normal' weight range. *JAMA*. 1995;273(6):461-465.
24. Colditz GA, Willett WC, Rotnitzky A, Manson JE. Weight gain as a risk factor for clinical diabetes mellitus in women. *Ann Intern Med*. 1995;122(7):481-486.
25. Huang Z, Willett WC, Manson JE, et al. Body weight, weight change, and risk for hypertension in women. *Ann Intern Med*. 1998;128(2):81-88.
26. Rimm EB, Stampfer MJ, Giovannucci E, et al. Body size and fat distribution as predictors of coronary heart disease among middle-aged and older US men. *Am J Epidemiol*. 1995;141(12):1117-1127.
27. Chan JM, Rimm EB, Colditz GA, Stampfer MJ, Willett WC. Obesity, fat distribution, and weight gain as risk factors for clinical diabetes in men. *Diabetes Care*. 1994;17(9):961-969.
28. Willett WC, Dietz WH, Colditz GA. Guidelines for healthy weight. *N Engl J Med*. 1999;341(6):427-434.
29. Report of the American Institute of Nutrition (AIN) Steering Committee on Healthy Weight. *J Nutr*. 1994;124(11):2240-2243.
30. Physical status: the use and interpretation of anthropometry. Report of a WHO Expert Committee. *World Health Organ Tech Rep Ser*. 1995;854:1-452.
31. Di Angelantonio E, Bhupathiraju Sh N, Wormser D, et al. Body-mass index and all-cause mortality: individual-participant-data meta-analysis of 239 prospective studies in four continents. *Lancet*. 2016;388(10046):776-786.
32. Stevens J, Cai J, Pamuk ER, Williamson DF, Thun MJ, Wood JL. The effect of age on the association between body-mass index and mortality. *N Engl J Med*. 1998;338(1):1-7.
33. Jensen MD, Ryan DH, Apovian CM, et al. 2013 AHA/ACC/TOS guideline for the management of overweight and obesity in adults: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines and The Obesity Society. *J Am Coll Cardiol*. 2014;63(25 Pt B):2985-3023.
34. Kushner RF, Batsis JA, Butsch WS, et al. Weight history in clinical practice: the state of the science and future directions. *Obesity (Silver Spring)*. 2020;28(1):9-17.
35. Pont SJ, Puhl R, Cook SR, Slusser W. Stigma experienced by children and adolescents with obesity. *Pediatrics*. 2017;140(6).
36. Puhl R, Peterson JL, Luedicke J. Motivating or stigmatizing? Public perceptions of weight-related language used by health providers. *Int J Obes (Lond)*. 2013;37(4):612-619.
37. Sutin AR, Terracciano A. Perceived weight discrimination and obesity. *PLoS One*. 2013;8(7):e70048.
38. Dutton GR, Tan F, Perri MG, et al. What words should we use when discussing excess weight? *J Am Board Fam Med*. 2010;23(5):606-613.
39. Volger S, Vetter ML, Dougherty M, et al. Patients' preferred terms for describing their excess weight: discussing obesity in clinical practice. *Obesity (Silver Spring)*. 2012;20(1):147-150.
40. Pi-Sunyer X, Blackburn G, Brancati FL, et al. Reduction in weight and cardiovascular disease risk factors in individuals with type 2 diabetes: one-year results of the Look AHEAD trial. *Diabetes Care*. 2007;30(6):1374-1383.
41. Faulconbridge LF, Wadden TA, Rubin RR, et al. One-year changes in symptoms of depression and weight in overweight/obese individuals with type 2 diabetes in the Look AHEAD study. *Obesity (Silver Spring)*. 2012;20(4):783-793.
42. Foster GD, Borradaile KE, Sanders MH, et al. A randomized study on the effect of weight loss on obstructive sleep apnea among obese patients with type 2 diabetes: the Sleep AHEAD study. *Arch Intern Med*. 2009;169(17):1619-1626.
43. Han L, You D, Zeng F, et al. Trends in self-perceived weight status, weight loss attempts, and weight loss strategies among adults in the United States, 1999-2016. *JAMA Netw Open*. 2019;2(11):e1915219.
44. Thomas JG, Bond DS, Raynor HA, Papandonatos GD, Wing RR. Comparison of smartphone-based behavioral obesity treatment with gold standard group treatment and control: a randomized trial. *Obesity (Silver Spring)*. 2019;27(4):572-580.
45. Perna S, Spadaccini D, Riva A, et al. A path model analysis on predictors of dropout (at 6 and 12 months) during the weight loss interventions in endocrinology outpatient division. *Endocrine*. 2018;61(3):447-461.
46. Miller BM, Brennan L. Measuring and reporting attrition from obesity treatment programs: a call to action! *Obes Res Clin Pract*. 2015;9(3):187-202.
47. Wadden TA, Neiberg RH, Wing RR, et al. Four-year weight losses in the Look AHEAD study: factors associated with long-term success. *Obesity (Silver Spring)*. 2011;19(10):1987-1998.
48. Skender ML, Goodrick GK, Del Junco DJ, et al. Comparison of 2-year weight loss trends in behavioral treatments of obesity: diet, exercise, and combination interventions. *J Am Diet Assoc*. 1996;96(4):342-346.
49. Patnode CD, Evans CV, Senger CA, Redmond N, Lin JS. US Preventive Services Task Force Evidence Syntheses, formerly Systematic Evidence Reviews. In: *Behavioral Counseling to Promote a Healthful Diet and Physical Activity for Cardiovascular Disease Prevention in Adults Without Known Cardiovascular Disease Risk Factors: Updated Systematic Review for the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force*. Rockville (MD): Agency for Healthcare Research and Quality (US); 2017.
50. LeBlanc ES, Patnode CD, Webber EM, Redmond N, Rushkin M, O'Connor EA. Behavioral and pharmacotherapy weight loss interventions to prevent obesity-related morbidity and mortality in adults: updated evidence report and systematic review for the US Preventive Services Task Force. *JAMA*. 2018;320(11):1172-1191.
51. Gadde KM, Atkins KD. The limits and challenges of antiobesity pharmacotherapy. *Expert Opin Pharmacother*. 2020:1-10.
52. Thomas CE, Mauer EA, Shukla AP, Rathi S, Aronne LJ. Low adoption of weight loss medications: a comparison of prescribing patterns of antiobesity pharmacotherapies and SGLT2s. *Obesity (Silver Spring)*. 2016;24(9):1955-1961.
53. Saxon DR, Iwamoto SJ, Mettenbrink CJ, et al. Antiobesity medication use in 2.2 million adults across eight large health care organizations: 2009-2015. *Obesity (Silver Spring)*. 2019;27(12):1975-1981.
54. Ganguly R, Tian Y, Kong SX, et al. Persistence of newer anti-obesity medications in a real-world setting. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract*. 2018;143:348-356.
55. Gorgojo-Martinez JJ, Basagoiti-Carreno B, Sanz-Velasco A, Serrano-Moreno C, Almodovar-Ruiz F. Effectiveness and tolerability of orlistat and liraglutide in patients with obesity in a real-world setting: the XENSOR Study. *Int J Clin Pract*. 2019;73(11):e13399.
56. Shibuya K, Ali KF, Ji X, et al. The benefit of short-term weight loss with anti-obesity medications in real-world clinical practice. *Endocr Pract*. 2019;25(10):1022-1028.
57. Wharton S, Liu A, Pakseresht A, et al. Real-world clinical effectiveness of liraglutide 3.0 mg for weight management in Canada. *Obesity (Silver Spring)*. 2019;27(6):917-924.
58. Grabarczyk TR. Observational comparative effectiveness of pharmaceutical treatments for obesity within the Veterans Health Administration. *Pharmacotherapy*. 2018;38(1):19-28.
59. Gelesis Inc. Plenity. Instructions for use. 2015. https://www.gelesis.com/wp-content/uploads/DEN180060_Physician_IFU_FDA_FINAL_4.9.2019Gelesis.pdf. Accessed April 10, 2020.
60. Demitri, C., Zohar Y, Heshmati HM, Urban LE, Aschenbach WG, Sannino A. Satiety, weight loss, and glycemic control-enhancing properties vary between functional fibers, mixed vegetables, and a novel hydrogel (Gelesis200). European Congress on Obesity; May 17-20, 2017; Porto, Portugal.
61. Greenway FL, Aronne LJ, Raben A, et al. A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled study of Gelesis100: a novel nonsystemic oral hydrogel for weight loss. *Obesity (Silver Spring)*. 2019;27(2):205-216.
62. Medical devices; gastroenterology-urology devices; classification of the oral removable palatal space occupying device for weight management and/or weight loss. Final order. *Fed Regist*. 2017;82(144):35067-35069.
63. US Food and Drug Administration. De Novo classification request for Sensor Monitored Alimentary Restriction Therapy (SMART) device. 2015. https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/cdrh_docs/reviews/DEN150033.pdf. Accessed February 27, 2020.
64. Ryan DH, Parkin CG, Longley W, Dixon J, Apovian C, Bode B. Efficacy and safety of an oral device to reduce food intake and promote weight loss. *Obes Sci Pract*. 2018;4(1):52-61.

Recognition and Management of a Less Common Cause of Chronic Kidney Disease: Autosomal Dominant Polycystic Kidney Disease

Matthew Weir, MD

CONTINUING MEDICAL EDUCATION

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After reading this review article on ADPKD, participants should be able to:

- **Identify** people at high risk for ADPKD
- **Conduct** a diagnostic evaluation
- **Initiate** evidence-based therapy to slow kidney progression and treat extra-renal manifestations

TARGET AUDIENCE

Family physicians and clinicians who wish to gain increased knowledge and greater competency regarding primary care management of chronic kidney disease.

DISCLOSURES

As a continuing medical education provider accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME), Primary Care Education Consortium (PCEC) requires any individual in a position to influence educational content to disclose any financial interest or other personal relationship with any commercial interest. This includes any entity producing, marketing, re-selling or distributing health care goods or services consumed by, or used on, patients. Mechanisms are in place to identify and resolve any potential conflict of interest prior to the start of the activity. In addition, any discussion of off-label, experimental, or investigational use of drugs or devices will be disclosed by the faculty.

Dr. Weir, author, and Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, editorial support, disclose that they have no real or apparent conflicts of interests to report. Additional PCEC staff report no conflicts of interest.

SPONSORSHIP

This activity is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium, in collaboration with the Primary Care Metabolic Group.

ACCREDITATION

The Primary Care Education Consortium is accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME) to provide continuing medical education for physicians.

CREDIT DESIGNATION

AMA PRA Category 1 – Primary Care Education Consortium designates this enduring material for a maximum of 1.0 AMA PRA Category 1 credit(s)™. Physicians should claim only the credit commensurate with the extent of their participation in the activity. CME is available September 1, 2020 to August 31, 2021.

METHOD OF PARTICIPATION

PHYSICIANS: To receive CME credit, please read the journal article and, on completion, go to www.pceconsortium.org/ADPKD to complete the online post-test and receive your certificate of completion.

PHYSICIAN ASSISTANTS AND NURSE PRACTITIONERS: AANP, ANCC, and AAPA accept certificates of participation of educational activities certified for AMA PRA Category 1 Credit™ from organizations accredited by ACCME.

SUPPORTER

This article is supported by an educational grant from Otsuka.

FACULTY

Matthew R. Weir, MD, Director of the Division of Nephrology, Department of Medicine, University of Maryland School of Medicine, Baltimore, MD.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Editorial support was provided by Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, at PCEC.

INTRODUCTION

Autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease (ADPKD) is the most common hereditary kidney disorder with an incidence of 1 in 1000 live births in the United States.[1] The progressive development and enlargement of renal cysts results in an exponential increase in total kidney volume. Some polycystic kidneys grow to be as large as a football and weigh as much as 30 pounds. Despite destruction of renal parenchyma, normal renal function usually is maintained for decades because of compensatory hyperfiltration in surviving glomeruli. However, when the majority of nephrons have been destroyed, typically during the fourth decade of life, renal function begins to decline, often leading to end-stage kidney disease (ESKD).[2] This is in sharp contrast to the much rarer autosomal recessive form of polycystic kidney disease that often is apparent at birth or in early infancy, frequently leading to death early in life.[1]

ADPKD is caused by mutations in the *PKD1* and *PKD2*

genes. These genes provide instructions for making proteins thought to be involved in normal kidney development, organization, and function.[1] Approximately 90% of individuals with ADPKD inherit a *PKD1* or *PKD2* mutation from 1 affected parent. The other 10% of cases are acquired, resulting from a new mutation in 1 of the genes in people with no family history of the disorder.[1] Historic evidence indicates that the *PKD1* mutation occurs in 85% of people with ADPKD and the *PKD2* mutation in 15%. Recent evidence in individuals from Canada and the United States suggests that the prevalence of *PKD2* could be approximately 30%.[3]

Variants in other genes linked to PKD, as well as environmental factors such as acute kidney injury, can influence cyst formation and disease progression.[4] Compared with *PKD2*, *PKD1* mutation is associated with greater cyst number and volume at a given age and results in more severe disease.[5] People with the *PKD2* genetic mutation generally experience milder kidney disease with fewer kidney cysts, delayed onset of hypertension and ESKD by nearly 2 decades, and longer overall survival.[6-8] However, because the renal prognosis differs according to the type of mutation in both *PKD1* and *PKD2,* the renal prognosis of patients with a *PKD2* mutation is not always favorable compared with patients with a *PKD1* mutation.[6]

DIAGNOSIS

Case scenario

A family physician sees a 28-year-old female for a preventive health visit. She appears healthy. Vital signs: BP 146/92 mm Hg (132/78 mm Hg 6 years ago); HR 74/min; RR 15/min; T 36.8°C. Her liver appears slightly enlarged. She reports that her belly generally feels full.

The diagnosis of ADPKD typically occurs in common clinical settings, such as routine evaluation in an asymptomatic patient with a positive family history of ADPKD, incidental finding during an imaging study conducted for pregnancy, trauma, surgery, or some other unrelated reason, initial evaluation for hypertension, or evaluation for hematuria, cyst rupture, kidney stones, or some other potential symptom related to ADPKD. Consideration should be given to non-ADPKD causes of hematuria and back pain, such as cancer, particularly in patients age >50. Asymptomatic at-risk people usually are not screened until adulthood because there is a lack of disease-specific treatment for this group. However, in children and adolescents, recent guidelines recommend ongoing surveillance or immediate diagnostic screening in those who are asymptomatic but at risk of ADPKD.[9]

Because 90% of patients with ADPKD have a genetic cause, obtaining a detailed family history is the first step in the diagnostic evaluation. The family history should elicit the number and relationship of affected family members, age at diagnosis, age at ESKD development, and known genetic mutations. If the family history is positive, diagnosis is confirmed primarily through imaging.[2,4] For those without a family history of ADPKD, the history should elicit information to assess the presence of other acquired disorders such as multiple benign simple cysts, autosomal dominant tuberous sclerosis complex, and von Hippel-Landau disease.

Imaging with ultrasound generally is used first because of its low cost and widespread availability, but is less sensitive than magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or computed tomography (CT). If the ultrasound is positive, MRI or CT is appropriate and more useful for determining prognosis. If MRI or CT is positive for ADPKD, referral to a nephrologist is recommended. Imaging might not be definitive in those with manifestations of mild disease such as low cyst size and/or burden (not unusual in some children with ADPKD), in which case genetic testing could be helpful. Otherwise, genetic testing often is limited to patients with atypical presentation, the presence of a few cysts but negative family history, or to rule out ADPKD in a young potential kidney donor.[2,4,10,11]

The diagnostic evaluation should assess for complications. Some involve the kidneys and urinary tract, such as gross hematuria in one-third of individuals, recurrent urinary tract infections in 30% to 50%, and kidney stones in 10% to 35%.[12] Beyond the kidneys, cysts often occur in the liver and less commonly in the pancreas, seminal vesicles, and arachnoid membrane.[4] Cardiovascular disorders often occur, including hypertension, heart valve abnormalities, and aortic and intracranial aneurysms.[13] Arterial hypertension occurs in approximately 50% to 70% of individuals when kidney function is still normal and might be the presenting sign.[13,14] Metabolic complications include insulin resistance and dyslipidemia.[15]

PROGNOSIS

Once an ADPKD diagnosis has been established, a key step is to identify individuals who are at high risk of progressing to chronic kidney disease because this informs prognosis and guides therapy. Measures of kidney function usually are already available, but could remain within normal ranges for several decades.[2] To more accurately assess risk of progression to ESKD, either the PROPKD score or Mayo classification system often is used. The PROPKD score is based on sex, hypertension onset before age 35, urologic complications before age 35, and genotype.[16] Because genetic testing is not routinely done outside of a clinical trial, use of PROPKD is limited.

TABLE. **Basic optimized treatment of adults with ADPKD[20]**

Intervention	Goal	Methods to achieve goal
Intensive BP control	≤110/75 mm Hg in: 18- to 50-year-olds eGFR >60 mL/min/1.73 m^2 Particularly: Mayo Clinic class 1 C-E Intracranial aneurysm Valvular heart disease ≤130/85 mm Hg in: Other adult with hypertension	Early detection is essential[a] By order of preference: 1. ACEI/ARB 2. α/β or cardioselective β-blocker 3. Dihydropyridine CCB 4. Diuretic Dietary Approaches to Stop Hypertension (DASH)-like diet at early stages
Sodium	Moderate restriction (2.3 to 3 g/d) Adjust for extrarenal losses (hot climate, runners, sauna, bowel disease) if appropriate	Counseling Dietitian follow-up Monitor 24-hour urine sodium
Hydration	Moderately enhanced hydration spread out over 24 h (during the day, at bedtime, and at night if waking up) Maintain urine osmolality ≤280 mOsm/kg	Counseling Monitor first morning urine osmolality, plasma copeptin if available Water prescription (L) = [24-h urine solute load (mOsm) ÷ 280] + insensible loss (∫ 0.5L)
Protein	0.8 to 1 g/kg of ideal body weight	Dietitian Monitor protein intake: 6.25 x (UUN in g/d + [0.03 x weight in kg])
Phosphorus	Moderate diet phosphate restriction (800 mg/d)	Dietitian Read food labels and watch for food additives containing phosphates Use of phosphate binders not different from other advanced CKD when needed
Acid base	Maintain plasma bicarbonate within the normal range (≥22 mEq/L)	Increase fruits/vegetables (2 to 4 cups/day) Oral sodium bicarbonate if needed
Caloric intake	Maintain normal BMI Moderation in caloric intake	Dietitian Regular exercise
Lipid control	Aim for serum LDL-C ≤100 mg/dL	Dietitian Regular exercise Statin if needed (ezetimibe if intolerant to statin)

Abbreviations: ACEI, angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor; ADPKD, autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease; ARB, angiotensin receptor blocker; BMI, body mass index; BP, blood pressure; CCB, calcium channel blocker; CKD, chronic kidney disease; eGFR, estimated glomular filtration rate; LDL-C, low density lipoprotein cholesterol; UUN, urine urea nitrogen.

[a]Screen children at risk every 3 years starting at age 5. Children with hypertension should be referred and managed by experts in pediatric hypertension

[Republished with permission of American Society of Nephrology from Recent Advances in the Management of Autosomal Dominant Polycystic Kidney Disease; Chebib FT, Torres VE; volume 13, issue 11; copyright ©2018; permission conveyed through Copyright Clearance Center, Inc.]

The Mayo classification system categorizes patients with typical ADPKD into 5 prognostic classes.[17] Required data are the patient's age, height, and total kidney volume, as well as a single representative coronal image of the kidneys. The total kidney volume can be determined using an online calculator (available at: https://www.mayo.edu/research/documents/pkd-center-adpkd-classification/doc-20094754). A benefit of the Mayo classification system is that it allows estimation of a patient's glomerular filtration rate (GFR) at any point in the future. However, it is not applicable to the approximately 5% of patients with ADPKD with an atypical presentation, ie, unilateral, asymmetrical, or segmental cyst burden.

TREATMENT

Goals

The focus of treatment is to slow disease progression and reduce the need for renal replacement therapy. Not to be forgotten, however, is the need to address the diminished quality of life experienced by patients with chronic kidney disease, particularly as the disease progresses.[18] In patients

with ADPKD, the physical burden caused by pain, abdominal fullness, cardiovascular disease, and urinary issues adds to the psychological burden stemming from treatment complexity and the hereditary nature of the disorder with its potential effect on family. Poor quality of life in patients with chronic kidney diseases has been shown to be associated with increased hospitalization and mortality rates.[19] Addressing quality-of-life issues beginning at the time of diagnosis and continuing over the patient's lifetime is a critical part of patient management and often requires involvement from other healthcare providers.

GENERAL MEASURES

The systemic consequences of ADPKD require a comprehensive treatment approach that includes a healthy lifestyle to enhance hydration, limit dietary sodium and protein intake, maintain a healthy weight, and reduce cardiovascular risk (**TABLE**).[20]

HYPERTENSION

Early in the course of ADPKD, before loss of kidney function, the activity of the renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS) often increases and extracellular volume expands. These changes are thought to contribute to increased blood pressure observed in 50% to 70% of patients with ADPKD, with an average onset at age 30.[21-23]

An angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor (ACEI) is generally recommended as first-line antihypertensive therapy based on the results of the HALT-PKD trials.[24,25] These trials were designed to determine the effect of intensive blockade of the RAAS and blood pressure control on the progression of kidney disease in individuals with an early or moderately advanced stage of ADPKD. In early ADPKD (eGFR >60 mL/min/1.73 m^2), the annual percentage increase in total kidney volume was not significantly different with the combination of the ACEI lisinopril and the angiotensin receptor blocker (ARB) telmisartan vs lisinopril plus placebo.[24] Similarly, there was no significant difference in change in eGFR between the 2 medication groups.[24] Lisinopril monotherapy resulted in greater decline in the left ventricular mass index and greater reduction in urinary albumin excretion. Similarly, in patients with ADPKD and stage 3 chronic kidney disease (eGFR 25 to 60 mL/min/1.73 m^2) monotherapy with lisinopril was sufficient to achieve blood pressure control (110/70 to 130/80 mm Hg); adding telmisartan offering no extra significant benefits.[25]

A key finding of the HALT-PKD trial is that rigorous blood pressure control (95/60 to 110/75 mm Hg), compared with standard blood pressure control (120/70 to 130/80 mm Hg), slowed the increase in total kidney volume with no overall change in the eGFR.[24] Secondary analysis confirmed that the kidney benefits were related to the degree of blood pressure control rather than pharmacologic intensity of RAAS blockade.[26]

PAIN

Pain associated with ADPKD could be acute or chronic.[2] Acute pain often is caused by kidney cyst hemorrhage, infection, or stones, while chronic pain generally is because of stretching or pulling of the kidney capsule caused by the enlarged kidneys or marked enlargement of the kidneys or liver that causes musculoskeletal back pain.[4] The pain etiology must be identified because some causes such as cyst infection could lead to severe systemic illness. Nonopioid analgesics, including short-term use of non-steroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, often are sufficient to provide relief for acute pain. Usual recommendations regarding analgesic use must be followed, such as dosing based on renal or liver function, age ≥65. Reserve opioids, often in combination with another analgesic, may be used for acute moderate-to-severe pain.

PREGNANCY

Women with ADPKD of reproductive potential should be advised that exogenous estrogen or progesterone exposure could aggravate ADPKD.[2] Family planning, which includes genetic counseling and preimplantation genetic diagnosis/*in vitro* fertilization access, could be offered.

CHILDREN

Current recommendations indicate that off-label use of vasopressin antagonists should be limited to children at high risk of early disease progression.[9] The use of somatostatin analogues and mTOR inhibitors (eg, sirolimus and everolimus) is not recommended, while the safety and efficacy of statin therapy are unclear. A low dietary salt intake is recommended.

TREATMENT OF RAPIDLY PROGRESSIVE DISEASE

Tolvaptan

Plasma levels of vasopressin and its precursor copeptin generally are increased in patients with ADPKD.[27,28] The plasma level of copeptin correlates with ADPKD severity and the rate of disease progression.[29] Therefore, the vasopressin system was identified as a therapeutic target, leading to development and FDA-approval of tolvaptan, a vasopressin V2-receptor antagonist.

FDA-approval of tolvaptan was based on the results of the TEMPO 3:4 phase III clinical trial involving 1445 adults age 18 to 50 with ADPKD, total kidney volume ≥60 mL, and creatinine clearance ≥60 mL/min.[30] After 3 years of treatment, tolvaptan significantly reduced the increase in total kidney volume and decline in kidney function compared with pla-

cebo. The rate of discontinuation was higher with tolvaptan vs placebo (23% vs 14%, respectively), primarily because of events related to aquaresis, ie, excretion of electrolyte-free water, such as thirst, polyuria, nocturia, polydipsia, as well as increases in liver enzyme levels >3 times the upper limit of normal.

The safety and efficacy of tolvaptan also have been demonstrated in patients with later-stage ADPKD (eGFR 25 to 65 mL/min/1.73 m^2 if age 18 to 55 or eGFR 25 to 44 mL/min/1.73 m^2 if age 56 to 65).[31] The adjusted mean change in eGFR over 1 year was significantly lower in the tolvaptan vs placebo group (-2.3 vs -3.61 mL/min/1.73 m^2, respectively; $P < .001$). The benefits of tolvaptan were maintained across subgroups, including sex, baseline eGFR, and stage of chronic kidney disease (except stage 2). Aquaretic and other adverse events led to 8.4% of patients withdrawing during a single-blind tolvaptan period before randomization. After randomization, the overall rates of new or worsening adverse events did not differ between the tolvaptan and placebo groups. After randomization, patients treated with tolvaptan had higher rates of polyuria, nocturia, thirst, polydipsia, dry mouth, diarrhea, and fatigue.

Tolvaptan is approved to slow decline in kidney function in adults at risk of rapidly progressing ADPKD. Patients at risk of rapid disease progression are those with Mayo class 1C, 1D, or 1E disease or PROPKD score ≥6. Most experience is in adults age ≤55 and eGFR ≥25 mL/min/1.73 m^2. The decision to prescribe tolvaptan should be made using a shared decision-making discussion with the patient based on risks (eg, liver toxicity, polyuria, polydipsia), benefits, and affordability. Assess for potential drug interactions. The morning and afternoon dosages are titrated over several weeks based on tolerability as well as alanine transferase and aspartate transaminase levels remaining <2 to 3 times the upper limit of normal.

Investigational therapies

Several medications are being investigated for treating ADPKD. These include tesevatinib, metformin, pioglitazone, nicotinamide, lixivaptan, and somatostatin analogs such as lanreotide. None is FDA-approved for ADPKD.

COLLABORATING WITH A NEPHROLOGIST

Managing patients with ADPKD should involve a nephrologist, ideally one in an ADPKD center of excellence.[2] Because of the complex treatment of these patients, close communication between nephrologist and family physician is critical. It is important to reach agreement as to who will assume responsibility for treating the extra-renal complications of ADPKD, such as hypertension. Integrating the management of these disorders into the holistic management of the ADPKD is a key role of the family physician.

PATIENT EDUCATION RESOURCES

- American Association of Kidney Patients [https://aakp.org/]
- American Kidney Fund [https://www.kidneyfund.org/kidney-disease/other-kidney-conditions/polycystic-kidney-disease.html]
- Genetic and Rare Diseases Information Center [https://rarediseases.info.nih.gov/diseases/10413/autosomal-dominant-polycystic-kidney-disease]
- National Human Genome Research Institute [https://www.genome.gov/Genetic-Disorders/Autosomal-Polycystic-Kidney-Disease]
- National Institute of Diabetes and Digestive and Kidney Diseases [https://www.niddk.nih.gov/health-information/kidney-disease/polycystic-kidney-disease/autosomal-dominant-pkd]
- National Kidney Foundation [https://www.kidney.org/atoz/content/polycystic]
- National Organization for Rare Disorders [https://rarediseases.org/rare-diseases/autosomal-dominant-polycystic-kidney-disease/]
- Polycystic Kidney Disease Foundation
  - ADPKD [https://pkdcure.org/what-is-adpkd/]
  - Patient Handbook [https://pkdfoundation.salsalabs.org/infopacketandpatienthandbook/index.html] ●

REFERENCES

1. Genetics Home Reference. Polycystic kidney disease. 2020. https://ghr.nlm.nih.gov/condition/polycystic-kidney-disease#statistics. Accessed March 18, 2020.
2. Chapman AB, Devuyst O, Eckardt KU, et al. Autosomal-dominant polycystic kidney disease (ADPKD): executive summary from a Kidney Disease: Improving Global Outcomes (KDIGO) Controversies Conference. *Kidney Int.* 2015;88(1):17-27.
3. Barua M, Cil O, Paterson AD, et al. Family history of renal disease severity predicts the mutated gene in ADPKD. *J Am Soc Nephrol.* 2009;20(8):1833-1838.
4. Bergmann C, Guay-Woodford LM, Harris PC, Horie S, Peters DJM, Torres VE. Polycystic kidney disease. *Nat Rev Dis Primers.* 2018;4(1):50.
5. Bae KT, Zhou W, Shen C, et al. Growth pattern of kidney cyst number and volume in autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol.* 2019;14(6):823-833.
6. Kataoka H, Fukuoka H, Makabe S, et al. Prediction of renal prognosis in patients with autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease using PKD1/PKD2 mutations. *J Clin Med.* 2020;9(1):146. doi: 10.3390/jcm9010146.
7. Hateboer N, v Dijk MA, Bogdanova N, et al. Comparison of phenotypes of polycystic kidney disease types 1 and 2. European PKD1-PKD2 Study Group. *Lancet.* 1999;353(9147):103-107.
8. Harris PC, Bae KT, Rossetti S, et al. Cyst number but not the rate of cystic growth is associated with the mutated gene in autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. *J Am Soc Nephrol.* 2006;17(11):3013-3019.
9. Gimpel C, Bergmann C, Bockenhauer D, et al. International consensus statement on the diagnosis and management of autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease in children and young people. *Nat Rev Nephrol.* 2019;15(11):713-726.
10. Pei Y, Obaji J, Dupuis A, et al. Unified criteria for ultrasonographic diagnosis of ADPKD. *J Am Soc Nephrol.* 2009;20(1):205-212.
11. Cornec-Le Gall E, Alam A, Perrone RD. Autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. *Lancet.* 2019;393(10174):919-935.
12. Bhasin B, Alzubaidi M, Velez JCQ. Evaluation and management of gross hematuria in autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease: a point of care guide for practicing internists. *Am J Med Sci.* 2018;356(2):177-180.
13. Ecder T. Cardiovascular complications in autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. *Curr Hypertens Rev.* 2013;9(1):2-11.

14. Nowak KL, Gitomer B, Farmer-Bailey H, et al. Mineralocorticoid antagonism and vascular function in early autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease: a randomized controlled trial. *Am J Kidney Dis.* 2019;74(2):213-223.
15. Chirumamilla R, Mina D, Siyahian S, Park M. Subclinical metabolic and cardiovascular abnormalities in autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. *Clin Nephrol.* 2018;90(4):237-245.
16. Cornec-Le Gall E, Audrezet MP, Rousseau A, et al. The PROPKD score: a new algorithm to predict renal survival in autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. *J Am Soc Nephrol.* 2016;27(3):942-951.
17. Irazabal MV, Rangel LJ, Bergstralh EJ, et al. Imaging classification of autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease: a simple model for selecting patients for clinical trials. *J Am Soc Nephrol.* 2015;26(1):160-172.
18. Yapa HE, Purtell L, Chambers S, Bonner A. The relationship between chronic kidney disease, symptoms and health-related quality of life: a systematic review. *J Ren Care.* 2020;46(2):74-84.
19. Mujais SK, Story K, Brouillette J, et al. Health-related quality of life in CKD patients: correlates and evolution over time. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol.* 2009;4(8):1293-1301.
20. Chebib FT, Torres VE. Recent advances in the management of autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol.* 2018;13(11):1765-1776.
21. Ecder T, Schrier RW. Hypertension in autosomal-dominant polycystic kidney disease: early occurrence and unique aspects. *J Am Soc Nephrol.* 2001;12(1):194-200.
22. Chapman AB, Johnson A, Gabow PA, Schrier RW. The renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system and autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. *N Engl J Med.* 1990;323(16):1091-1096.
23. Bell PE, Hossack KF, Gabow PA, Durr JA, Johnson AM, Schrier RW. Hypertension in autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. *Kidney Int.* 1988;34(5):683-690.
24. Schrier RW, Abebe KZ, Perrone RD, et al. Blood pressure in early autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. *N Engl J Med.* 2014;371(24):2255-2266.
25. Torres VE, Abebe KZ, Chapman AB, et al. Angiotensin blockade in late autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. *N Engl J Med.* 2014;371(24):2267-2276.
26. Brosnahan GM, Abebe KZ, Moore CG, et al. Determinants of progression in early autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease: is it blood pressure or renin-angiotensin-aldosterone-system blockade? *Curr Hypertens Rev.* 2018;14(1):39-47.
27. Bankir L, Bouby N, Ritz E. Vasopressin: a novel target for the prevention and retardation of kidney disease? *Nat Rev Nephrol.* 2013;9(4):223-239.
28. Clark WF, Devuyst O, Roussel R. The vasopressin system: new insights for patients with kidney diseases: Epidemiological evidence and therapeutic perspectives. *J Intern Med.* 2017;282(4):310-321.
29. Boertien WE, Meijer E, Li J, et al. Relationship of copeptin, a surrogate marker for arginine vasopressin, with change in total kidney volume and GFR decline in autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease: results from the CRISP cohort. *Am J Kidney Dis.* 2013;61(3):420-429.
30. Torres VE, Chapman AB, Devuyst O, et al. Tolvaptan in patients with autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. *N Engl J Med.* 2012;367(25):2407-2418.
31. Torres VE, Chapman AB, Devuyst O, et al. Tolvaptan in later-stage autosomal dominant polycystic kidney disease. *N Engl J Med.* 2017;377(20):1930-1942.

Recognition and Management of Hypoglycemia

Jay H Shubrook, DO, FAAFP, FACOFP

"Hypoglycemia is the major limiting factor in the glycemic management of type 1 and type 2 diabetes."

—American Diabetes Association[1]

This statement by the American Diabetes Association (ADA) comes as no surprise to family physicians. People with diabetes, their families, and physicians all regularly share concerns about hypoglycemia. These concerns are well founded. More than 30% of patients with type 1 diabetes mellitus (T1D) annually experience 1 to 3 episodes of severe hypoglycemia, ie, low blood glucose characterized by altered mental and/or physical status requiring assistance.[2] For people with type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2D), approximately 50% experience hypoglycemia, and 20% have ≥1 episode of severe hypoglycemia per year.[3] In 2016, hypoglycemia was the reported cause for 235,000 emergency department (ED) visits.[4] Of these, 22.3% were admitted to the hospital and <0.1% died. Another study found that, in patients with T1D since childhood who died over 24 years of follow-up, hypoglycemia was the cause in 10%.[5]

Wider use of continuous glucose monitoring (CGM) provides for a more accurate assessment compared with relying on symptom recognition or self-monitored blood glucose and has resulted in greater insight into the true frequency of hypoglycemia.[6,7] A recent analysis of 2 trials involving 307 adults with T1D treated with multiple insulin injections per day, and with glycated hemoglobin (A1C) ≤9% to 10%, showed that patients were hypoglycemic >1 hour per day.[8] Patients spent a median of 22 minutes/day with a blood glucose <54 mg/dL, and 72 minutes/day with a blood glucose <70 mg/dL. In patients with T2D (N=108) treated with insulin and/or oral medications, a prospective evaluation showed that 49% experienced ≥1 hypoglycemic episode (mean 1.74 episodes) over a 5-day period.[9] Of these patients, 75% experienced ≥1 asymptomatic hypoglycemic episode.

Hypoglycemia may not be recognized if it occurs during the night or in patients with hypoglycemic unawareness. Similarly, episodes are likely to be missed despite periodic daily monitoring using finger sticks, especially in persons with wide glycemic variability. Moreover, the risk of severe hypoglycemia occurs similarly, across the range of A1C levels, although the reason for this is unclear. The Diabetes and Aging Study showed that the prevalence of severe hypoglycemia was 12% in persons with A1C <6%, 11% in persons with A1C 7% to 7.9%, and 14% in persons with A1C ≥9%.[10]

A wide variety of patient factors contribute to an increased risk of hypoglycemia. These include longer duration of diabetes, older age, history of recent severe hypoglycemia, chronic kidney disease, and tight glycemic control.[11-13] Medications such as sulfonylurea, meglitinide, and basal insulin, particularly at doses >0.5 units/kg per day, are common causes of hypoglycemia.[14] Lifestyle factors such as a variable eating, administering insulin after meals, drinking alcohol, and vigorous or unexpected exercise also increase the risk of hypoglycemia.[11,13]

The consequences of hypoglycemia extend well beyond ED visits and increased health care resource utilization. People feel bad when they are hypoglycemic and these spells may lead to suboptimal treatment adherence, resistance to intensifying treatment, diabetes distress and reduced quality of life among patients and families/caregivers, higher mortality rate, diminished academic performance, and possibly diminished cognition.[5,15-28] A key consequence of suboptimal treatment or scheduled adherence, as well as resistance to intensifying treatment, is that patients remain on suboptimal glucose-lowering therapy. Thus, patients are exposed

Jay H Shubrook, DO, FAAFP, FACOFP, Professor, Primary Care Department, Director of Clinical Research, Director of Diabetes Services, Touro University, California

DISCLOSURES

Dr. Shubrook discloses that he is a consultant for Lilly and Novo Nordisk. Gregory Scott has no disclosures to report.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Editorial support was provided by Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, at the Primary Care Education Consortium (PCEC).

SPONSORSHIP

This activity is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and the Primary Care Metabolic Group and supported by funding from Xeris Pharmaceuticals, Inc.

TABLE 1. **Physiologic responses to hypoglycemia**[1,30]

Plasma glucose (mg/dL)	Physiologic response	Function in hypoglycemia
80-85	Primary: Decreased insulin secretion Secondary: Increased glucose production; decreased glucose uptake by insulin-sensitive tissues	First physiologic defense against hypoglycemia. Primary glucose regulatory factor
65-70	Primary: Increased glucagon secretion Secondary: Increased glucose production	Second physiologic defense against hypoglycemia. Primary glucose counterregulatory factor
	Primary: Increased epinephrine secretion Secondary: Increased glucose production; increased renal gluconeogenesis; decreased insulin secretion; decreased glucose uptake by insulin-sensitive tissues	Third physiologic defense against hypoglycemia. Critical when glucagon is deficient
	Primary: Increased cortisol, growth hormone secretion Secondary: decreased glucose uptake by insulin-sensitive tissues	Not critical, slower counterregulatory factor
50-55	Neurogenic symptoms	Prompt behavioral defense of food intake
<50	Neuroglycopenic symptoms	Compromised behavioral defense

to frequent postprandial hyperglycemia, prolonged basal hyperglycemia, reduced blood glucose time-in-range, and increased glucose variability that may further accelerate the dire clinical consequences of diabetes.

DEFINITIONS & SYMPTOMS

CASE SCENARIO

KT is a 64-year-old woman diagnosed with T2D 7 years ago. She presents today with her husband after having experienced an episode of severe hypoglycemia during the night 2 days ago that awakened her husband. She was making unusual sounds and when her husband tried to wake her, she was incoherent; her blood glucose was 50 mg/dL. She was transported to the local ED where she was treated, held for observation, then released. Her husband is worried that this may be happening more often and wonders if he should be checking her blood glucose during the night.

Hypoglycemia criteria were reclassified in 2017 by a panel of medical, patient, and charitable organizations.[29] Level 1 hypoglycemia is a blood glucose level < 70 mg/dL, and is a threshold generally recognized for the activation of neuroendocrine responses to decreasing blood glucose levels (**TABLE 1**).[30] If blood glucose levels <70 mg/dL recur, some patients with diabetes mellitus begin to experience hypoglycemia unawareness around this level. Level 2 hypoglycemia is a blood glucose <54 mg/dL, and is a threshold when neurogenic (autonomic) and neuroglycopenic symptoms may increase in severity and at which immediate treatment is required. Level 3 hypoglycemia is a severe event characterized by altered mental and/or physical functioning requiring assistance from another person, or who are unable to take fast-acting oral carbohydrate during hypoglycemia.[1,29] It is important to note that level 3 hypoglycemia is not defined by a specific blood glucose level, and it should be considered a life-threatening event that requires both prompt and definitive intervention.

Signs and symptoms of hypoglycemia are categorized as neurogenic or neuroglycopenic (**TABLE 2**).[1,29,31] Neurogenic symptoms, which largely manifest as increased sympathetic neural activity, trigger increased serum epinephrine levels and exhibit symptoms such as palpitations, anxiety, tremors, tachycardia, and behavioral defense mechanisms for hunger and immediate food ingestion. As the blood glucose further declines, neuroglycopenic symptoms such as drowsiness and cognitive dysfunction appear, which can impair behavioral defenses.

The presentations of hypoglycemia symptoms are heterogeneous and individual to patients, and are correlated only loosely with the blood glucose level. For example, older adults and patients with long-term diabetes may exhibit fewer neurogenic symptoms and instead manifest more neuroglycopenic manifestations of hypoglycemia. Longstanding diabetes and recent episodes of any hypoglycemia may attenuate the neurogenic response, which can further contribute to hypoglycemia unawareness[32-34]; in these patients the first actual sign of hypoglycemia may be the clinical presentation of severe hypoglycemia. However, hypoglycemia unawareness is generally reversible if hypoglycemia can be avoided

TABLE 2. **Signs and symptoms of hypoglycemia**[1,29,31]

Neurogenic (autonomic)	Neuroglycopenic
Sweating	Confusion
Palpitations	Drowsiness / Lethargy
Tachycardia	Slurred speech / Difficulty speaking
Tremors	Unable to follow commands / Unresponsive
Anxiety	Inappropriate behavior
Hunger	Headache
Irritability	Blurred vision
Tingling	Cool skin
	Unconsciousness
	Seizures
	Coma

for 2 to 3 weeks, as this time allows inborn mechanisms to become active again.

SELF-MANAGEMENT

Diabetes mellitus is a chronic disease, the management of which is determined by numerous decisions the patient makes daily. It is critical, therefore, that patients with T1D or T2D are educated and supported so that they are able to optimally self-manage their diabetes mellitus. In this regard, a key role for the family physician is to individualize therapy over the course of the disease to best meet the patient's health and other needs. This strategy includes balancing the benefits of glucose control while minimizing the risk of hypoglycemia.

Identifying and addressing patient concerns and barriers to treatment, including hypoglycemia, is especially important. Among the various strategies that can be employed, perhaps those most important may be to build on the established and trusting relationship with the patient and to provide ongoing education and support to both the patient and the family/caregiver, eg, shared decision-making and using open-ended questions. Establishing good rapport combined with open patient provider communication, regular screening, education, and training should help ease patient (and family/caregiver) concerns and help to build the confidence needed to manage the everyday risks of hyperglycemia and hypoglycemia.

At every visit, patients should be assessed for the occurrence of symptomatic and asymptomatic hypoglycemia. In addition to asking the patient about such episodes, a review of the patient's blood glucose log is helpful—but often inadequate because episodes of hypoglycemia, particularly those occurring during sleep, may not be captured through routine blood glucose monitoring. This is especially important to consider in patients treated with daily doses of basal insulin > 0.5 units/kg (particularly when given with sulfonylureas),[14] and in patients who use continuous glucose monitoring and/or insulin pumps[35] regardless of their A1C levels.

HYPOGLYCEMIA MANAGEMENT IN CLINICAL PRACTICE

CASE SCENARIO

A 23-year-old man with T1D is being seen for a routine visit. His family physician notes that his A1C has increased over the past 11 months, rising from 6.8% to 7.2%. Upon questioning, the patient admits that he is no longer increasing his insulin dose based on his blood glucose monitoring because a friend of his was recently hospitalized after a severe hypoglycemic episode. The patient notes that he has frequently experienced symptomatic hypoglycemia through the years and is now especially fearful of a severe hypoglycemic episode. He finds hypoglycemia to be untimely and embarrassing.

The patient's growing concern about hypoglycemia emphasizes the importance of routinely assessing concerns and barriers to treatment. Partners and family members are routinely more distressed and concerned about hypoglycemia and severe hypoglycemia than the person with diabetes.[36] This emphasizes the importance of providing ongoing patient and family education and training, and the critical role for a written and executable action plan for patient self-management. A key part of the action plan is how to identify and acutely respond to adverse events such as hypoglycemia in any situation (eg, exercise, work, school, home, travel). The action plan also should include how patients can prevent hypoglycemia by adjusting medications, meals, and exercise based on blood glucose monitoring. Patient understanding and ability to follow the action plan should be assessed, particularly when changes are made.

A patient resource related to the recognition and self-management of hypoglycemia has been developed by the ADA (see https://professional.diabetes.org/sites/professional.diabetes.org/files/pel/source/sci-advisor_2018_low_blood_glucose_hypoglycemia-newb-final.pdf). For hypoglycemia that can be self-managed, the ADA recommends implementing the "15-15 rule."[37] To raise the blood glucose, 15 g of fast-acting oral carbohydrate should be ingested and the blood glucose level checked 15 minutes later. If the blood glucose remains <70 mg/dL, another 15 g of fast-acting oral carbohydrate should be ingested. These steps are repeated as necessary until the blood glucose is ≥70 mg/dL, at which time a meal or snack is to be eaten to ensure the blood glucose level does not decrease again. Carbohydrate options

TABLE 3. **Selected glucagon products for outpatient use**

	Baqsimi[40]	GlucaGen[41,42]	Gvoke[43]
Approved age group	≥4 years	Children, adults	≥2 years
Route of administration	Intranasal	IM, IV, SC	SC
Dosage form, strength	Intranasal device containing glucagon powder 3 mg	Single-dose vial containing glucagon 1 mg with 1 disposable syringe or vial containing 1 mL SWFR	Single-dose prefilled autoinjector or prefilled syringe containing glucagon 0.5 mg/1 mL or 1 mg/0.2 mL
Reconstitution needed?	No	Yes	No
Contraindications	Pheochromocytoma, insulinoma, known hypersensitivity to glucagon/excipients		
Adverse reactions	[a]Nausea, headache, vomiting, URTI	Nausea, vomiting	[a]Nausea, vomiting, injection site edema raised ≥1 mm, headache
Mean time to peak plasma glucagon level	Adults: 15 minutes Children: 15-20 minutes	12.5 minutes[b]	Adults: 50 minutes Children: 34-51 minutes
Onset of rise of plasma glucose level	<10 minutes	<10 minutes (IM)	<10 minutes
Mean time to peak plasma glucose level	NR	~30 minutes (IM) 30-45 minutes (SC)	NR
Mean maximum glucose increase from baseline	Adults: 140 mg/dL Children: 102-138 mg/dL	—	Adults: 176 mg/dL Children: 123-145 mg/dL

Abbreviations: IM, intramuscular; IV, intravenous; NR, not reported; SC, subcutaneous; SWFR, sterile water for reconstitution; URTI, upper respiratory tract irritation.
[a]Incidence ≥2%
[b]Median

include glucose tablets, gel tube, hard candies, jellybeans, or gumdrops in the amount needed to provide 15 g carbohydrate. Other options include 4 ounces of juice or regular (not diet) soda; 1 tablespoonful of sugar, honey, or corn syrup; or 8 ounces of nonfat or 1% milk.

Glucagon

When a hypoglycemia episode occurs and (1) the patient is unable to take oral carbohydrate, (2) the blood glucose level has not recovered to normal levels despite using the 15-15 rule and the patient's status is deteriorating, or (3) the blood glucose level is very low (ie, <54 mg/dL), then the prompt administration of glucagon is required.

Glucagon is a hormone normally secreted by the pancreas that stimulates glycogenolysis and the release of glucose from the liver. Recent ADA guidelines recommend that glucagon should be prescribed for all individuals at increased risk of level 2 hypoglycemia, ie, blood glucose <54 mg/dL, so the medication is available should it be needed.[1] However, despite these guidelines, few patients who are eligible for a glucagon prescription, including persons who have experienced level 3 hypoglycemia, receive such a prescription.[38,39]

More than 60 glucagon products are available in the United States; several products are shown in **TABLE 3**.[40-43] Historically, glucagon products required reconstitution immediately prior to use, contributing to frequent dosing and administration errors. Now there are 2 exceptions. One is a prefilled syringe or autoinjector (Gvoke) and the other an intranasal formulation (Baqsimi).

All glucagon products provide an onset of rise of the plasma glucose level in <10 minutes. If there has been no response 15 minutes after administration, a second dose may be administered while waiting for emergency assistance. When the patient responds to glucagon treatment, oral carbohydrate should be given to restore liver glycogen and prevent the recurrence of hypoglycemia.

Glucagon administration is not limited to health care professionals; the formulation is generally administered by an individual other than the person experiencing severe hypoglycemia. Because the complexity of standard powder glucagon kits can be intimidating if the person administering them is not properly trained,[28] it is essential to educate family members, friends, and coworkers of patients at risk of hypoglycemia about the importance of glucagon, when and how to administer the glucagon product, and what to do after glucagon administration.[44] Fortunately, the newer intranasal and stable soluble glucagon formulations available in autoinjector pens make this task simpler.[1]

Gvoke PFS and Gvoke HypoPen (glucagon injection)

Gvoke is a concentrated, liquid stable glucagon for subcutaneous injection, indicated for the treatment of severe hypo-

glycemia in pediatric and adult patients with diabetes age ≥2 years. It is provided in a premixed, premeasured, and prefilled device in both adult (1 mg) and pediatric (0.5 mg) dosages.

Two phase 3, randomized, blinded, 2-way crossover trials compared a powder glucagon product available as a Glucagon Emergency Kit (GEK) requiring manual reconstitution with the liquid stable glucagon product available as a prefilled premeasured autoinjector (Gvoke HypoPen).[45] Adults with T1D (N=161) were subjected to induced level 2 hypoglycemia by intravenous administration of regular insulin, followed by treatment with a single dose of 1 of the 2 glucagon products. After a 7- to 28-day washout period, patients were crossed over to the other glucagon product. The primary outcome, increase in the plasma glucose concentration from <50 mg/dL to >70 mg/dL or ≥20 mg/dL rise in plasma glucose within 30 minutes of glucagon administration, was achieved by 99% of patients when treated with Gvoke and 100% of patients when treated with GEK.[43] The mean time to successful plasma glucose recovery was 13.8 minutes in the Gvoke group and 10 minutes in the GEK group. Comparing common adverse events between Gvoke and GEK, nausea occurred in 29.8% and 22.9% of patients, respectively, and vomiting in 16.1% and 9.6%, respectively.[43]

The safety and efficacy of the concentrated, liquid stable glucagon product has been evaluated in a phase 3 single-arm, open-label trial in children with T1D, ages 2 to <18 years (N=31).[43]

Baqsimi (glucagon nasal powder)

Baqsimi is an intranasal glucagon powder indicated for the treatment of severe hypoglycemia in patients with diabetes age ≥4 years. It is provided in a premeasured and prefilled device in a 3 mg dosage, for both adults and children.

The safety and efficacy of the intranasal glucagon product (Baqsimi) was compared with intramuscular (IM) administration of glucagon in a randomized, crossover, non-inferiority study involving adults with T1D (N=75).[46] Hypoglycemia was induced by intravenous insulin, followed by treatment with a single dose of 1 of the 2 glucagon products. After a 7- to 28-day washout period, patients were crossed over to the other glucagon product. The primary outcome, increase in the plasma glucose concentration from the nadir (mean 48-49 mg/dL) to >70 mg/dL within 30 minutes of glucagon administration, was achieved by 100% of patients when treated with the IM product and 98.7% of patients when treated with the intranasal product. The mean time to success was 13 minutes and 16 minutes for the IM and intranasal products, respectively. Nausea with or without vomiting occurred during 38% and 35% of visits, respectively. Head/facial discomfort was reported during 9% and 25% of IM and intranasal visits, respectively.

The safety and efficacy of the intranasal glucagon product have been shown to be similar to an IM product in children with T1D, ages 4 to <17 years (N=48).[47]

SUMMARY

Hypoglycemia is serious and a common experience among patients with diabetes mellitus, yet the condition is often underscreened, unrecognized, and underreported. Although hypoglycemia serves as a common barrier to optimal diabetes treatment, particularly in patients who use insulin, most patients do not receive the regular ongoing screening, education, and training support needed to prevent and self-manage hypoglycemia when it occurs.

The ADA recommends that all patients with diabetes who are at increased risk of clinically important hypoglycemia should have glucagon prescribed. To support this practice, family physicians should provide applicable screening, education, and training for both patients and caregivers on a regular basis. While most glucagon products are in powder form and require manual reconstitution immediately prior to injection, 2 exceptions improve the simplicity of glucagon administration. One is a prefilled syringe or autoinjector and the other is an intranasal product. The safety and efficacy of these 2 glucagon products are similar to products requiring manual reconstitution. ●

REFERENCES

1. American Diabetes Association. 6. Glycemic targets: standards of medical care in diabetes-2020. *Diabetes Care.* 2020;43(Suppl 1):S66-S76.
2. International Hypoglycaemia Study Group. Minimizing hypoglycemia in diabetes. *Diabetes Care.* 2015;38(8):1583-1591.
3. Edridge CL, Dunkley AJ, Bodicoat DH, et al. Prevalence and incidence of hypoglycaemia in 532,542 people with type 2 diabetes on oral therapies and insulin: A systematic review and meta-analysis of population based studies. *PLoS One.* 2015;10(6):e0126427.
4. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. N*ational Diabetes Statistics Report 2020.* Published 2020. https://www.cdc.gov/diabetes/pdfs/data/statistics/national-diabetes-statistics-report.pdf. Accessed February 26, 2020.
5. Skrivarhaug T, Bangstad HJ, Stene LC, Sandvik L, Hanssen KF, Joner G. Long-term mortality in a nationwide cohort of childhood-onset type 1 diabetic patients in Norway. *Diabetologia.* 2006;49(2):298-305.
6. Lin YK, Groat D, Chan O, et al. Associations between the time in hypoglycemia and hypoglycemia awareness status in type 1 diabetes patients using continuous glucose monitoring systems. *Diabetes Technol Ther.* 2020;doi:10.1089/dia.2020.0016.
7. Gomez-Peralta F, Dunn T, Landuyt K, Xu Y, Merino-Torres JF. Flash glucose monitoring reduces glycemic variability and hypoglycemia: real-world data from Spain. *BMJ Open Diabetes Res Care.* 2020;8(1).
8. Oliver N, Gimenez M, Calhoun P, et al. Continuous glucose monitoring in people with type 1 diabetes on multiple-dose injection therapy: the relationship between glycemic control and hypoglycemia. *Diabetes Care.* 2020;43(1):53-58.
9. Gehlaut RR, Dogbey GY, Schwartz FL, Marling CR, Shubrook JH. Hypoglycemia in type 2 diabetes--more common than you think: a continuous glucose monitoring study. *J Diabetes Sci Technol.* 2015;9(5):999-1005.
10. Lipska KJ, Warton EM, Huang ES, et al. HbA1c and risk of severe hypoglycemia in type 2 diabetes: the Diabetes and Aging Study. *Diabetes Care.* 2013;36(11):3535-3542.
11. Seaquist ER, Anderson J, Childs B, et al. Hypoglycemia and diabetes: a report of a workgroup of the American Diabetes Association and the Endocrine Society. *Diabetes Care.* 2013;36(5):1384-1395.
12. Patel A, MacMahon S, Chalmers J, et al. Intensive blood glucose control and vascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2008;358(24):2560-2572.
13. American Diabetes Association. 4. Comprehensive medical evaluation and assessment of comorbidities: standards of medical care in diabetes-2020. *Diabetes Care.* 2020;43(Suppl 1):S37-S47.
14. Reid T, Gao L, Gill J, et al. How much is too much? Outcomes in patients using high-dose insulin glargine. *Int J Clin Pract.* 2016;70(1):56-65.
15. Idris I, Gulati K, Perez-Nieves M, et al. Associated factors that influenced persistence

with basal analog insulin therapy among people with type 2 diabetes: an exploratory analysis from a UK real-world sample. *Prim Care Diabetes.* 2019;13(2):106-112.
16. Polonsky WH, Henry RR. Poor medication adherence in type 2 diabetes: recognizing the scope of the problem and its key contributors. *Patient Prefer Adherence.* 2016;10:1299-1307.
17. McCoy RG, Lipska KJ, Van Houten HK, Shah ND. Association of cumulative multimorbidity, glycemic control, and medication use with hypoglycemia-related emergency department visits and hospitalizations among adults with diabetes. *JAMA Netw Open.* 2020;3(1):e1919099.
18. Hendrieckx C, Ivory N, Singh H, Frier BM, Speight J. Impact of severe hypoglycaemia on psychological outcomes in adults with type 2 diabetes: a systematic review. *Diabet Med.* 2019;36(9):1082-1091.
19. Pawaskar M, Iglay K, Witt EA, Engel SS, Rajpathak S. Impact of the severity of hypoglycemia on health-related quality of life, productivity, resource use, and costs among US patients with type 2 diabetes. *J Diabetes Complications.* 2018;32(5):451-457.
20. Strandberg RB, Graue M, Wentzel-Larsen T, Peyrot M, Wahl AK, Rokne B. The relationships among fear of hypoglycaemia, diabetes-related quality of life and psychological well-being in Norwegian adults with type 1 diabetes. *Diabetes Res Clin Pract.* 2017;124:11-19.
21. Standl E, Stevens SR, Lokhnygina Y, et al. Confirming the bidirectional nature of the association between severe hypoglycemic and cardiovascular events in type 2 diabetes: Insights from EXSCEL. *Diabetes Care.* 2020;43(3):643-652.
22. Nathan DM. The Diabetes Control and Complications Trial/Epidemiology of Diabetes Interventions and Complications study at 30 years: overview. *Diabetes Care.* 2014;37(1):9-16.
23. Lacy ME, Gilsanz P, Eng C, Beeri MS, Karter AJ, Whitmer RA. Severe hypoglycemia and cognitive function in older adults with type 1 diabetes: the Study of Longevity in Diabetes (SOLID). *Diabetes Care.* 2020;43(3):541-548.
24. Pilgaard KA, Breinegaard N, Johannesen J, et al. Episodes of severe hypoglycemia is associated with a progressive increase in hemoglobin A1c in children and adolescents with type 1 diabetes. *Pediatr Diabetes.* 2020;21(5):808-813.
25. Knight MF, Perfect MM. Glycemic control influences on academic performance in youth with Type 1 diabetes. *Sch Psychol.* 2019;34(6):646-655.
26. Jensen MH, Dethlefsen C, Hejlesen O, Vestergaard P. Association of severe hypoglycemia with mortality for people with diabetes mellitus during a 20-year follow-up in Denmark: a cohort study. *Acta Diabetol.* 2020;57(5):549-558.
27. Rossi MC, Nicolucci A, Ozzello A, et al. Impact of severe and symptomatic hypoglycemia on quality of life and fear of hypoglycemia in type 1 and type 2 diabetes. Results of the Hypos-1 observational study. *Nutr Metab Cardiovasc Dis.* 2019;29(7):736-743.
28. Haymond MW, Liu J, Bispham J, Hickey A, McAuliffe-Fogarty AH. Use of glucagon in patients with type 1 diabetes. *Clin Diabetes.* 2019;37(2):162-166.
29. Agiostratidou G, Anhalt H, Ball D, et al. Standardizing clinically meaningful outcome measures beyond HbA1c for type 1 diabetes: a consensus report of the American Association of Clinical Endocrinologists, the American Association of Diabetes Educators, the American Diabetes Association, the Endocrine Society, JDRF International, The Leona M and Harry B Helmsley Charitable Trust, the Pediatric Endocrine Society, and the T1D Exchange. *Diabetes Care.* 2017;40(12):1622-1630.
30. Gehlaut RR, Shubrook J Jr,. Revisiting hypoglycemia in diabetes. *Osteopath Fam Physician.* 2014;1:19-25.
31. Tesfaye N, Seaquist ER. Neuroendocrine responses to hypoglycemia. *Ann N Y Acad Sci.* 2010;1212:12-28.
32. Cryer PE. Mechanisms of hypoglycemia-associated autonomic failure in diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2013;369(4):362-372.
33. Segel SA, Paramore DS, Cryer PE. Hypoglycemia-associated autonomic failure in advanced type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes.* 2002;51(3):724-733.
34. White NH, Skor DA, Cryer PE, Levandoski LA, Bier DM, Santiago JV. Identification of type I diabetic patients at increased risk for hypoglycemia during intensive therapy. *N Engl J Med.* 1983;308(9):485-491.
35. Foster NC, Beck RW, Miller KM, et al. State of type 1 diabetes management and outcomes from the T1D Exchange in 2016-2018. *Diabetes Technol Ther.* 2019;21(2):66-72.
36. Polonsky WH, Fisher L, Hessler D, Johnson N. Emotional distress in the partners of type 1 diabetes adults: worries about hypoglycemia and other key concerns. *Diabetes Technol Ther.* 2016;18(5):292-297.
37. American Diabetes Association. Low blood glucose (hypoglycemia). Published 2020. https://professional.diabetes.org/pel/low-blood-glucose-hypoglycemia-english. Accessed April 3, 2020.
38. Fendrick AM, He X, Liu D, Buxbaum JD, Mitchell BD. Glucagon prescriptions for diabetes patients after emergency department visits for hypoglycemia. *Endocr Pract.* 2018;24(10):861-866.
39. Mitchell BD, He X, Sturdy IM, Cagle AP, Settles JA. Glucagon prescription patterns in patients with either type 1 or 2 diabetes with newly prescribed insulin. *Endocr Pract.* 2016;22(2):123-135.
40. Baqsimi [package insert]. Indianapolis, IN: Eli Lilly and Company; August 2019.
41. GlucaGen [package insert]. Ridgefield, CT: Boehringer Ingelheim Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; July 2018.
42. GlucaGen Hypokit [package insert]. Plainsboro, NJ: Novo Nordisk Inc.; July 2018.
43. Gvoke [package insert]. Chicago, IL: Xeris Pharmaceuticals, Inc.; March 2020.
44. Fidler C, Elmelund Christensen T, Gillard S. Hypoglycemia: an overview of fear of hypoglycemia, quality-of-life, and impact on costs. *J Med Econ.* 2011;14(5):646-655.
45. ClinicalTrials.gov. Safety and efficacy of G-Pen compared to Lilly glucagon for hypoglycemia rescue in adult type 1 diabetics (NCT02656069). Published October 30, 2018. https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/study/NCT02656069?term=NCT02656069&draw=2&rank=1. Accessed May 5, 2020.
46. Rickels MR, Ruedy KJ, Foster NC, et al. Intranasal glucagon for treatment of insulin-induced hypoglycemia in adults with type 1 diabetes: a randomized crossover noninferiority study. *Diabetes Care.* 2016;39(2):264-270.
47. Sherr JL, Ruedy KJ, Foster NC, et al. Glucagon nasal powder: a promising alternative to intramuscular glucagon in youth with type 1 diabetes. *Diabetes Care.* 2016;39(4):555-562.

Review of LDL-C Lowering with Focus on New and Emerging Agents

Eliot A. Brinton, MD, FAHA, FNLA, FACE

CONTINUING MEDICAL EDUCATION

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

- **Identify** the benefits and limitations of statin therapy as a treatment option for lowering LDL-C.
- **Intensify** treatment in appropriate patients or refer for intensification.
- **Describe** the safety and efficacy of ezetimibe, bempedoic acid, PCSK9 inhibitors, LDL apheresis.
- **Describe** the safety and efficacy of medications in late-stage development or under review by the FDA for LDL-C reduction.

TARGET AUDIENCE

Family physicians and clinicians who wish to gain increased knowledge and greater competency regarding primary care management of hyperlipidemia.

DISCLOSURES

As a continuing medical education provider accredited by the ACCME, PCEC requires any individual in a position to influence educational content to disclose any financial interest or other personal relationship with any commercial interest. Mechanisms are in place to identify and resolve any potential conflict of interest prior to the start of the activity. In addition, any discussion of off-label, experimental, or investigational use of drugs or devices will be disclosed by the faculty.

Dr. Brinton serves on the advisory board for Esperion, Amarin, 89bio, AstraZeneca, Kowa and Novartis, and on the speakers' bureau for Amarin and Esperion. He is a grant recipient for Kowa. Dr. Backes, editorial support, discloses that he serves on the speakers' bureau for Kowa Pharmaceuticals. Dr. Scott, editorial support, discloses that he has no real or apparent conflicts of interest to report.

SPONSORSHIP

This activity is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium, in collaboration with the Primary Care Metabolic Group.

ACCREDITATION

The Primary Care Education Consortium is accredited by the ACCME to provide continuing medical education for physicians.

CREDIT DESIGNATION

AMA PRA Category 1 – Primary Care Education Consortium designates this enduring material for a maximum of 1.0 AMA PRA Category 1 credit(s)™. Physicians should claim only the credit commensurate with the extent of their participation in the activity. CME is available September 1, 2020 to August 31, 2021.

METHOD OF PARTICIPATION

PHYSICIANS: To receive CME credit, please read the journal article and, on completion, go to www.pceconsortium.org/hyper to complete the online post-test and receive your certificate of completion.

PHYSICIAN ASSISTANTS AND NURSE PRACTITIONERS: AANP, ANCC, and AAPA accept certificates of participation of educational activities certified for AMA PRA Category 1 Credit™ from organizations accredited by ACCME.

SUPPORT

This article is supported by an educational grant from Novartis Pharmaceutical Corporation.

FACULTY

Eliot Brinton MD, FAHA, FNLA, FACE, Past President, American Board of Clinical Lipidology, President, Utah Lipid Center, Salt Lake City, UT.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT

Editorial support was provided by Jim Backes, PharmD, and Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh of PCEC.

INTRODUCTION

There is growing consensus that the "LDL Hypothesis" has been proven. First, essentially every well-conducted cardiovascular outcomes trial (CVOT) with low-density lipoprotein cholesterol (LDL-C)-lowering has also shown reduction in atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease (ASCVD). This is true not only for the many CVOTs with statins, but also for at least 5 other classes of medications as well as 3 non-pharmacological treatments.[1-3] Meta-analyses of these trials show a log-linear relationship between on-treatment LDL-C and ASCVD risk.[4-8] Further, extensive mechanistic data strongly support a causal role for LDL in atherogenesis.[9] Causation is further supported by several Mendelian randomization studies of a wide variety of genetic conditions, which have consistently reported decreased or increased ASCVD risk related to genetically decreased or increased LDL-C, respectively.

This first section of this review will discuss familial hypercholesterolemia (FH), the most important disease of elevated LDL-C levels, in the context of other causes of LDL-C elevations. Next, it will discuss risk assessment and stratification,

relevant to decision-making for LDL-C lowering treatment. Next, LDL-C lowering medications will be covered, beginning with statins, which are by far the best-established agents and which are universally used as first-line treatment for LDL-C lowering and ASCVD prevention. Finally, existing and emerging statin adjuncts will be discussed, regarding their use in management of patients who cannot achieve appropriate LDL-C control with a statin alone.

FAMILIAL HYPERCHOLESTEROLEMIA

FH may be the single most common monogenic disease,[10] with the prevalence of heterozygous FH (HeFH) estimated to be ~1/200 patients in the general population,[11] and homozygous FH (HoFH) being rare, at roughly 1/300,000.[12] HeFH typically presents with untreated LDL-C levels ≥190 mg/dL, Achilles tendon xanthomas (after ~40 years old), and a positive family history of LDL-C >190 mg/dL and premature ASCVD. In contrast, patients with HoFH typically present with LDL-C levels >500 mg/dL and widespread xanthomas or even a CV event in childhood.[13]

The 2018 American College of Cardiology (ACC)/American Heart Association (AHA)/National Lipid Association (NLA) Multi-Society Guideline on the Management of Blood Cholesterol recommends that patients age 20 to 75 years without ASCVD but with an LDL-C ≥190 mg/dL should be treated with maximally tolerated statin therapy to achieve an LDL-C reduction >50%. Further, statin adjuncts are to be considered for secondary prevention if LDL-C remains above a treatment threshold of 70 mg/dL for very high-risk and 100 mg/dL for high-risk patients.[14] The addition of ezetimibe is the first of statin-adjunct. In patients failing to achieve an LDL-C decrease of 50%, or with LDL-C remaining above 100 mg/dL, with both a statin and ezetimibe, use of a proprotein convertase subtilisin/kexin type 9 inhibitor (PCSK9i) may then be considered.[15] For HoFH, early identification and referral to a lipid specialist is needed. Treatment is more aggressive than for HeFH in that more than 1 statin adjunct is always required, and usually also LDL-apheresis (also used for more severe HeFH) and sometimes lomitapide (indicated only for HoFH) as well.

RISK STRATIFICATION AND PATIENT SELECTION FOR STATINS AND STATIN ADJUNCTS

Risk stratification is crucial, first, to identify which patients warrant consideration of statin therapy, then to determine the appropriate level of statin intensity, and finally, to direct any needed use of statin adjuncts.

For patients with prior ASCVD ("secondary prevention"), the 2018 Multi-Society Guidelines[14] classify patients as "very high-risk ASCVD" if they have a history of 2 or more major ASCVD events (acute coronary syndrome within the past 12 months, heart attack, ischemic stroke, or symptomatic peripheral arterial disease) or one such event plus ≥2 high-risk conditions (age ≥65 years, HeFH, history of coronary revascularization [outside of a major ASCVD event], diabetes mellitus [DM], chronic kidney disease, hypertension, smoking, congestive heart failure, or LDL-C ≥100 mg/dL despite maximally-tolerated statin therapy). These patients warrant maximally-tolerated statin therapy followed by ezetimibe and then a PCSK9i mAb for LDL-C ≥70 mg/dL.

Patients with a prior event who do not meet these criteria are termed "not very high-risk ASCVD" and are divided by age ≤75 or >75 years. In the former group, treatment is similar to that for very high-risk but PCSK9i are not indicated. For the former group, high- or moderate-intensity statins are warranted, whereas for patients age >75 years, statin continuation may be considered, but initiation of statin therapy is not said to be warranted. That said, a CVOT with ezetimibe in patients age >75 years (EWTOPIA, see below) was first reported at the time of the presentation of the 2018 Multi-Society guidelines. The results of EWTOPIA showed convincing ASCVD benefit with ezetimibe monotherapy, which should, therefore, be considered in these patients.

The 2018 guidelines also state that, for patients without a prior ASCVD event, those with DM and age 40-75 years should receive at least moderate-intensity statin therapy regardless of calculated ASCVD risk. High-intensity statins are warranted in patients with DM in the setting of multiple additional risk factors, independent of age. Treatment of patients age 40-75 years without prior ASCVD, DM, or FH may be guided by the estimated 10-year ASCVD risk score. For risk <5%, lifestyle is sufficient. For risk 5% to 20%, moderate-intensity statins are usually recommended, depending on the presence and number of ASCVD "risk enhancers" [eg, family history of premature ASCVD, South Asian ancestry, metabolic syndrome, Lp(a) or triglycerides, renal insufficiency and/or inflammatory conditions/markers]. For a 10-year ASCVD risk ≥20%, statins are always warranted, with a goal to reduce LDL-C by ≥50%.[14]

BEYOND STATINS

A key question for clinicians is: *What is the overarching strategy for LDL-C lowering?* In contrast to treatment of hypertension or type 2 DM, where overtreatment is always a practical concern, there is good evidence for additional benefit and no harm from treatment to very low LDL-C levels. Patient cost and inconvenience, and side effects of LDL-lowering medications, as well as limitations to prescriber time and effort constitute practical limits, however, to the degree of LDL-C lowering that is reasonable in a given patient.[16]

The concept of LDL-C goal, although not stated in the 2018 Multi-Society Guidelines, was presented in the 2017 AACE Lipid Guidelines, was upheld in the 2019 ESC/EAS Guidelines, and remains the most widely used approach to LDL-lowering worldwide. An LDL-C goal <100 mg/dL is used for high-risk primary prevention, a goal <70 mg/dL for secondary prevention, and a goal <55 mg/dL or even <50 mg/dL is to be considered for patients with very high-risk secondary prevention, or "extreme risk." Because on-treatment LDL-C is an excellent predictor of ASCVD risk, it is standard-of-care to optimize the intensity of the statin regimen (to match ASCVD risk but also to manage side-effects, if any, and to acknowledge diabetes risk). If the LDL-C remains above threshold or goal, then statin adjuncts are needed.[16]

ESTABLISHED STATIN ADJUNCTS

Well-established statin "adjuncts" (add-on therapies) include ezetimibe, niacin, bile acid sequestrants (BAS), and PCSK-9i, the first 3 providing much less LDL-C lowering than statins or the PCSK9i class. While ezetimibe is well-tolerated and well-established as the first-line statin adjunct, niacin and the BAS have limited use because of common adverse effects (AEs) and cumbersome administration.[14,15]

Surprisingly, ezetimibe is commonly underutilized, likely due to the modest degree of its LDL-C-lowering effect, as well as a history of poor insurance coverage (as a branded product) and questionable risk-benefit ratio suggested by early trials following its approval.[17] Ezetimibe is frequently prescribed, however, by lipidologists due to 1) good LDL-lowering relative to statin up-titration, (2) low rates of AEs, (3) generic availability, (4) positive CVOT data, and (5) ease of administration as a small tablet given once daily without regard to meals. For these same reasons, ezetimibe can and should be used widely by family practitioners and other generalists.

The large CVOT of ezetimibe, IMPROVE-IT, demonstrated that ezetimibe added to simvastatin 40 mg daily among patients with recent acute coronary syndrome and well-controlled LDL-C, further reduced CV events by 6%.[18] The mean LDL-C level of 54 mg/dL achieved with ezetimibe (added to simvastatin) was unprecedented at the time and provided strong support for the LDL-C hypothesis that "lower is better." Importantly, IMPROVE-IT resolved any safety concerns with ezetimibe, as major AEs were no different than placebo during the 6-year study. Further, there was no increase in new-onset diabetes, in contrast to statins, and CVD benefits tended to be better in patients with diabetes at baseline. Further, EWTOPIA, a recent CVOT of ezetimibe monotherapy in adults age ≥75 years with elevated LDL-C showed ezetimibe to be quite effective for primary prevention,[19] which is consistent with a sub-analysis of IMPROVE-IT.[20] These findings support ezetimibe as the preferred therapy after a statin, as reflected in the various clinical guidelines.[14-16,21]

NEWER STATIN ADJUNCTS

The recent Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approval of 2 new LDL-C-lowering classes provides the ability to achieve unprecedented LDL-C reduction in high-risk patients.[22]

Bempedoic acid

Bempedoic acid (BA) inhibits the cholesterol synthesis pathway a few steps above HMG CoA reductase (inhibited by statins), thus reducing LDL-C in the same way as statins, to which its effect is additive. An advantage of BA is that it is given as a pro-drug which is converted into the active form only in the liver and not in the muscle, thus limiting muscle-related AEs.[22]

The LDL-C reduction with BA is only moderate and similar to that of ezetimibe, to which it is fully additive. Together, they decrease LDL-C comparable to monotherapy with low- to moderate-intensity statins.[22] BA is indicated as an adjunct to diet and exercise and maximally tolerated statin therapy in patients with HeFH or established ASCVD who require additional LDL-C lowering. Although this indication does not mention ezetimibe use, ezetimibe should always be used before, or concomitantly with BA. BA may be taken any time, once daily, without regard to meals.

The safety and efficacy of BA have been tested in several relatively small, short-term randomized controlled trials.[22-24] When administered with moderate- or high-intensity statin therapy, BA lowers LDL-C by about 18% and the fixed-dose combination with ezetimibe provides LDL-C reductions of 28% to 36%.[22,23] Importantly, in statin-intolerant patients, BA provides an additional 5% to 10% LDL-C-lowering. BA appears to have anti-inflammatory effects, significantly reducing levels of high-sensitivity C-reactive protein by about 25% to 30%, similar and additive to the effects of statins and ezetimibe.[22]

Overall, BA is well tolerated with reports of most AEs, including myalgias, not differing between BA and placebo, likely due to a lack of pro-drug activation in skeletal muscle.[22,23,25] Importantly, however, BA is associated with small but significantly higher rates of gout (1.5% vs 0.4%) and tendon rupture (0.5% vs 0%) compared to placebo,[25] primarily in those with predisposing or underlying conditions (eg, hyperuricemia, gout, prior tendon rupture). Due to the strength and consistency of ASCVD benefit with all LDL-lowering agents, BA was approved by the FDA even while awaiting results from CLEAR Outcomes, the large CVOT of BA, which are expected in 2022.[24]

BA should clearly be used only in patients who require further LDL-lowering despite optimal use of statins then ezetimibe. BA will likely be of particular benefit in patients with statin intolerance, since they will have greater need for LDL-C lowering and BA will provide somewhat greater LDL-C decreases in such patients. Except in the rare case of ezetimibe intolerance, the fixed-dose combination of BA and ezetimibe will likely be preferred over BA alone since the combination simplifies the use of 2 needed medications. Interestingly, despite a lack of CVOT data, BA is likely best used before a PCSK9i, due to the strong evidence for the LDL hypothesis. This is due to greater ease of use of a tablet vs an injection, as well as easier payer approval and generally lower patient out-of-pocket expenses with BA than with a PCSK9i. An important potential exception to this sequence would be in patients with LDL-C >30% above goal, in whom BA would be unlikely to provide sufficient LDL-lowering. Additional considerations are the presence of anti-inflammatory effects vs their absence with PCSK9i, contrasting with the ability of PCSK9i to lower Lp(a), lacking with BA.[14,15]

Proprotein convertase subtilisin/kexin 9 inhibitors (PCSK9i)

The liver secretes PCSK9 into plasma, where it binds to the LDL-receptor. Although formation of this complex does not impair binding of LDL to its receptor, when that receptor is internalized into the hepatocyte, the PCSK9/LDL-receptor complex is degraded. This prevents the usually robust recycling of LDL-receptors, greatly lowering LDL-receptor number and function, thus increasing LDL-C levels.[26]

Two fully human monoclonal antibodies to PCSK9, alirocumab and evolocumab, were developed and received FDA approval in 2015 for use in patients needing additional LDL-C lowering after diet, lifestyle and maximally tolerated statin therapy.[26,27] Despite the lack of mention of ezetimibe in their label, a PCSK9i should almost always be tried after adding ezetimibe (and BA). PCSK9is are administered via subcutaneous (SC) injection, typically every 2 weeks, although once-monthly dosing is also available.[26,27] They cause a dramatic 50% to 65% LDL-C decrease, depending on regimen details. The PCSK9i mAbs, being fully human proteins, evoke minimal to no production of blocking antibodies and only rare allergic reactions. Further, other AEs are minimal, beyond an occasional mild injection site reaction.[27] Importantly, since their approval, CVOTs of both agents have demonstrated a 15% reduction in major CV events when added to maximally tolerated statin therapy.[28,29] Both CVOTs showed unprecedented very low LDL-C levels roughly in the range of 7 to 40 mg/dL, well beyond that achievable with statin monotherapy. The fact that CV event rates continued to decline (albeit gradually) within this ultralow LDL-C range has served to further prove the LDL hypothesis and to reinforce the clinical impetus for aggressive LDL-C reduction in patients at extremely high ASCVD risk.

The use of PCSK9is has been less widespread than initially expected due to high annual cost (both alirocumab and evolocumab $5850), payer requirements, which have eased somewhat, and the patient education needed to regularly self-administer a subcutaneous injection.[30]

LDL apheresis and the MTP inhibitor

Two other treatments are used only by a small number of highly sub-specialized lipidologists, but it is useful for family physicians to be aware of them so that they can refer their patients when other treatments are inadequate to bring LDL-C levels down to goal.

LDL-apheresis is a procedure in which a patient's plasma is run over columns to remove most of the LDL, very low-density lipoprotein and Lp(a) from the circulation. Other pro-atherogenic factors, such as fibrinogen and inflammatory factors are also removed. This procedure is offered only in a handful of centers across the United States and is indicated only for patients with prior ASCVD and an LDL-C remaining above 100 mg/dL (or higher, in the absence of a prior event), despite maximally tolerated medical therapy. It is also newly approved for lowering elevated Lp(a), an important ASCVD risk factor, for which it is the only FDA-approved treatment.[13] Apheresis lowers the LDL-C level by about 70%-80%. Although levels quickly rebound, when the treatments are repeated on a regular basis, usually every 2 weeks, there is a cumulative time-averaged decrease of roughly 60%, while CV events are reduced by roughly three-quarters.[2,31,32] The 2- to 4-hour treatment session is safe and generally well tolerated.

Lomitapide is a microsomal triglyceride transfer protein (MTP) inhibitor approved by the FDA for HoFH[33]; it is occasionally used off-label for severe HeFH. Lomitapide blocks synthesis of both apo B-48 in the intestine and apo B-100 in the liver. High-dose lomitapide can reduce LDL-C up to 50%, even in the absence of LDL-receptor function. Unfortunately, it usually can be tolerated only at lower doses, due to severe gastrointestinal AEs (eg, bloating, steatorrhea) which occur even with fairly low fat intake. Further, concerns regarding hepatoxicity restrict the use of lomitapide under a Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy (REMS) program.[13,33]

EMERGING LIPID-LOWERING THERAPIES

Inclisiran

Inclisiran is a PCSK9i agent in late clinical development, which employs a novel mechanism for inhibiting production

of the PCSK9 protein in hepatocytes.[34] Inclisiran consists of a small interfering RNA (siRNA) segment that blocks synthesis of PCSK9 for a prolonged period of time and reduces[22,34-36] LDL-C by about 50%.[36] Due to the long intracellular persistence of the siRNA molecule, after the initial 2 doses (generally given at a 2-month interval), efficacy is maintained with a dosing interval of just twice annually, making this treatment dramatically easier than the once- to twice-monthly injections required for the PCSK9i mAbs. In light of the novel mechanism and prolonged half-life of action of inclisiran, evaluation of its safety will require special FDA scrutiny. Extensive testing to date has shown similar AEs with inclisiran and placebo (except for a low rate of injection site reactions).[22,36] A decision by the FDA is expected late in 2020. Meanwhile, a large CVOT with inclisiran is expected to complete in 2023.

LIB003

LIB003 is an investigational agent in early phase III trials that offers another approach to inhibiting PCSK9. The novel agent is a recombinant fusion protein that combines the PCSK9-binding domain, adnectin, with human albumin to extend the half-life to 15 days.[37] Phase II dose-ranging studies demonstrated that LIB003 once-monthly reduced LDL-C by 77% after 12 weeks and by 60% after 36 weeks.[37] Treatment was well tolerated with overall AEs being similar to placebo in early studies.

Evinacumab

Evinacumab is another agent in development for hypercholesterolemia that consists of fully human mAbs which inhibit angiopoietin-like protein 3 (ANGPTL3), reducing LDL-C levels independently of the LDL-receptor.[22,38] Given this mechanism of action, evinacumab has reduced LDL-C by 49% in patients with HoFH, and the FDA has granted it "breakthrough therapy" designation for this disorder.[38] Interestingly, evinacumab also increases lipoprotein lipase activity and has shown a 75% reduction in triglyceride levels.[39] The FDA accepted the biologics license application for evinacumab for priority review in August 2020.

SUMMARY

Elevated LDL-C levels are the primary treatable cause of ASCVD. Decades of CVOTs involving multiple therapies for lowering LDL-C demonstrate remarkably consistent reductions in ASCVD events, proportional to LDL-C reductions. Statins remain the foundation for LDL-C-lowering treatment; however, their efficacy at doses tolerated by the patient is not always sufficient to achieve goal levels. Existing statin adjuncts can efficiently and safely provide further LDL-C-lowering. Further, with the likely advent of additional LDL-lowering agents in the near future, even better LDL-C control should become easier and more universally achievable. ●

REFERENCES

1. Silverman MG, Ference BA, Im K, et al. Association between lowering LDL-C and cardiovascular risk reduction among different therapeutic interventions: A systematic review and meta-analysis. *JAMA*. 2016;316(12):1289-1297.
2. Moriarty PM, Gray JV, Gorby LK. Lipoprotein apheresis for lipoprotein(a) and cardiovascular disease. *J Clin Lipidol.* 2019;13(6):894-900.
3. Landray, MJ, Haynes R, Hopewell JC, et al. Effects of extended-release niacin with laropiprant in high-risk patients. *N Engl J Med.* 2014;371(3):203-212.
4. Baigent C, Blackwell L, Emberson J, et al. Efficacy and safety of more intensive lowering of LDL cholesterol: a meta-analysis of data from 170,000 participants in 26 randomised trials. *Lancet.* 2010;376(9753):1670-1681.
5. Giugliano RP, Pedersen TR, Park J-G, et al. Clinical efficacy and safety of achieving very low LDL-cholesterol concentrations with the PCSK9 inhibitor evolocumab: a prespecified secondary analysis of the FOURIER trial. *Lancet.* 2017;390(10106):1962-1971.
6. Cholesterol Treatment Trialists C, Mihaylova B, Emberson J, et al. The effects of lowering LDL cholesterol with statin therapy in people at low risk of vascular disease: meta-analysis of individual data from 27 randomised trials. *Lancet.* 2012;380(9841):581-590.
7. Ference BA, Yoo W, Alesh I, et al. Effect of long-term exposure to lower low-density lipoprotein cholesterol beginning early in life on the risk of coronary heart disease. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2012;60(25):2631-2639.
8. Ference BA. Mendelian randomization studies: using naturally randomized genetic data to fill evidence gaps. *Curr Opin Lipidol.* 2015;26(6):566-571.
9. Goldstein Joseph L, Brown Michael S. A century of cholesterol and coronaries: From plaques to genes to statins. *Cell.* 2015;161(1):161-172.
10. Genest J, Hegele RA, Bergeron J, et al. Canadian cardiovascular society position statement on familial hypercholesterolemia. *Can J Cardiol.* 2014;30(12):1471-1481.
11. Catapano AL, Lautsch D, Tokgözoglu L, et al. Prevalence of potential familial hypercholesterolemia (FH) in 54,811 statin-treated patients in clinical practice. *Atherosclerosis.* 2016;252:1-8.
12. WHO Human Genetics Programme. Familial hypercholesterolaemia (FH): report of a second WHO consultation. Geneva, 4 September 1998. Published 1999. https://apps.who.int/iris/handle/10665/66346. Accessed June 26, 2020.
13. Alonso R, Perez de Isla L, Muñiz-Grijalvo O, Diaz-Diaz JL, Mata P. Familial hypercholesterolaemia diagnosis and management. *Eur Cardiol.* 2018;13(1):14-20.
14. Grundy SM, Stone NJ, Bailey AL, et al. 2018 AHA/ACC/AACVPR/AAPA/ABC/ACPM/ADA/AGS/APhA/ASPC/NLA/PCNA guideline on the management of blood cholesterol: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Clinical Practice Guidelines. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2018;139:e1082-e1143.
15. Lloyd-Jones DM, Morris PB, Ballantyne CM, et al. 2016 ACC Expert Consensus Decision Pathway on the Role of Non-Statin Therapies for LDL-Cholesterol Lowering in the Management of Atherosclerotic Cardiovascular Disease Risk: A report of the American College of Cardiology Task Force on Clinical Expert Consensus documents. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2016;68(1):92-125.
16. Arnett DK, Blumenthal RS, Albert MA, et al. 2019 ACC/AHA guideline on the primary prevention of cardiovascular disease. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2019;74(10):e177-e232.
17. Fleg JL, Mete M, Howard BV, et al. Effect of statins alone versus statins plus ezetimibe on carotid atherosclerosis in type 2 diabetes: the SANDS (Stop Atherosclerosis in Native Diabetics Study) trial. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2008;52(25):2198-2205.
18. Cannon CP, Blazing MA, Giugliano RP, et al. Ezetimibe added to statin therapy after acute coronary syndromes. *NEJM.* 2015;372(25):2387-2397.
19. Ouchi Y, Sasaki J, Arai H, et al. Ezetimibe lipid-lowering trial on prevention of atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease in 75 or older (EWTOPIA 75): A randomized, controlled trial. *Circulation.* 2019;140(12):992-1003.
20. Bach RG, Cannon CP, Giugliano RP, et al. Effect of simvastatin-ezetimibe compared with simvastatin monotherapy after acute coronary syndrome among patients 75 years or older: A secondary analysis of a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA Cardiol.* 2019;4(9):846-854.
21. Mach F, Baigent C, Catapano AL, et al. 2019 ESC/EAS Guidelines for the management of dyslipidaemias: lipid modification to reduce cardiovascular risk: The Task Force for the Management of Dyslipidaemias of the European Society of Cardiology (ESC) and European Atherosclerosis Society (EAS). *Eur Heart J.* 2020;41(1):111-188.
22. Wójcik C. Emerging lipid lowering agents targeting LDL cholesterol. *Postgrad Med.* 2020:doi:10.1080/00325481.2020.1751422.
23. Al Rifai M, Jia X, Al-Mallah MH, Miedema MD, Martin SS, Virani SS. Major randomized clinical trials in cardiovascular disease prevention presented at the 2019 American College of Cardiology Annual Scientific Session. *Curr Atheroscler Rep.* 2019;21(8):31.
24. Esperion Therapeutics. Evaluation of major cardiovascular events in patients with, or at high risk for, cardiovascular disease who are statin intolerant treated with bempedoic acid (ETC-1002) or placebo (CLEAR Outcomes). https://clinicaltrials.gov/ct2/show/NCT02993406, Published 2020. Accessed April 22, 2020.
25. Nexletol [package insert]. https://www.accessdata.fda.gov/drugsatfda_docs/label/2020/211616s000lbl.pdf, Published 2020. Accessed April 22, 2020.
26. Giugliano RP, Sabatine MS. Are PCSK9 inhibitors the next breakthrough in the cardiovascular field? *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2015;65(24):2638.
27. Pasta A, Cremonini AL, Pisciotta L, et al. PCSK9 inhibitors for treating hypercholesterolemia. *Expert Opin Pharmaco.* 2020;21(3):353-363.

28. Schwartz GG, Steg PG, Szarek M, et al. Alirocumab and cardiovascular outcomes after acute coronary syndrome. *N Engl J Med.* 2018;379(22):2097-2107.
29. Sabatine MS, Giugliano RP, Keech AC, et al. Evolocumab and clinical outcomes in patients with cardiovascular disease. *N Engl J Med.* 2017;376(18):1713-1722.
30. Mahmood T, Shapiro MD. Future role of proprotein convertase subtilisin/kexin type 9 inhibitors in preventive cardiology. *Curr Opin Lipidol.* 2019;34(5):519-525.
31. Moriarty PM, Hemphill L. Lipoprotein apheresis. *Cardiol Clin.* 2015;33(2):197-208.
32. Keller C. LDL-apheresis in homozygous LDL-receptor-defective familial hypercholesterolemia: the Munich experience. *Athero Suppl.* 2009;10(5):21-26.
33. deGoma EM. Lomitapide for the management of homozygous familial hypercholesterolemia. *Rev Cardiovasc Med.* 2014;15(2):109-118.
34. Dyrbus K, Gasior M, Penson P, Ray KK, Banach M. Inclisiran-New hope in the management of lipid disorders? *J Clin Lipidol.* 2020;14(1):16-27.
35. Stoekenbroek RM, Kallend D, Wijngaard PL, Kastelein JJ. Inclisiran for the treatment of cardiovascular disease: the ORION clinical development program. *Future Cardiol.* 2018;14(6):433-442.
36. Ray KK, Wright RS, Kallend D, et al. Two phase 3 trials of inclisiran in patients with elevated LDL cholesterol. *N Engl J Med.* 2020;382(16):1507-1519.
37. Stein EA, Turner T, Kereiakes DJ, Butcher B, Mangu P, Zhou R. Abstract 17222: Safety, tolerability and LDL-C reduction with LIB003 a novel anti-PCSK9 recombinant fusion protein: Results of open-label extension phase 2B study. *Circulation.* 2019;140(Suppl 1):A17222-A17222.
38. Banerjee P, Chan K-C, Tarabocchia M, et al. Functional analysis of LDLR (low-density lipoprotein receptor) variants in patient lymphocytes to assess the effect of evinacumab in homozygous familial hypercholesterolemia patients with a spectrum of LDLR activity. *Arterioscler Thromb Vasc Biol.* 2019;39(11):2248-2260.
39. Ahmad Z, Banerjee P, Hamon S, et al. Inhibition of angiopoietin-like protein 3 with a monoclonal antibody reduces triglycerides in hypertriglyceridemia. *Circulation.* 2019;140(6):470-486.

Strategies for Preventing COPD Exacerbations

Barbara Yawn, MD, MSc, FAAFP

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

After participating in this activity on chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), family physicians will be better able to:

- **Identify** symptomatic patients at increased risk of COPD to prompt early diagnostic evaluation
- **Individualize** evidence-based therapy with the goal of reducing COPD exacerbations and improving patient outcomes
- **Identify** the role of fixed triple-combination inhalers as part of individualized therapy

It's natural to think about the burden of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) in terms of the prevalence (6% of US adults),[1,2] mortality (fourth leading cause of death at a rate of 44 deaths per 100,000 US population),[3,4] and total cost of care ($49 billion/year).[5] Although sobering, these statistics don't adequately capture the patient perspective, where the burden of COPD generally is characterized as daily symptoms, limited activity, poor quality of life, and contributing to fear of acute worsening of respiratory symptoms (previously called exacerbations), often leading to hospitalization and early death.[6,7] In fact, COPD is a leading cause of disability, accounting for 1.2 million years lived with disability in the United States in 2016.[8]

A survey of patients with COPD who were hospitalized for acute worsening of respiratory symptoms identified 6 major unmet needs: (1) understanding of disease: most correctly identified their diagnosis and recognized their symptoms worsening over time, but only one-half understood their disease severity and prognosis; (2) symptoms: breathlessness was universal and severe; (3) physical limitations: COPD prevented participation in activities; (4) emotional distress: depressive symptoms and/or anxiety were present in most participants; (5) social isolation: most identified social limitations and felt confined to their homes; and (6) concerns about the future: one-half expressed fear about their future.[9]

To improve the health outcomes of these patients by reducing COPD-related hospital readmissions, the American Thoracic Society identified barriers to optimal care[10]:

- Poor communication
- Ineffective discharge guidance
- Lack of effective follow-up
- Limited efforts to engage patients and family
- Patient not being placed at the center of care
- Fragmentation of system/differences in where individual seeks care.

More recently, the Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease (GOLD) has provided several key recommendations[11]:

1. The management strategy for stable COPD patients should be based on assessment of symptoms and risk of exacerbations.
2. The assessment should determine the level of airflow limitation, its impact on the patient's health status, and the risk of future events (eg, exacerbation, hospitalization, or death).
3. All individuals who smoke should be strongly encouraged and supported to quit.
4. The main treatment goals are reduction of symptoms and future risk of exacerbations.
5. The goal for treating COPD exacerbations is to minimize the negative impact of the current exacerbation and to prevent a future event.
6. Following an exacerbation, appropriate measures for preventing a future event should be initiated.

Barbara Yawn, MD, MSc, FAAFP
Adjunct Professor, Family and Community Health, University of Minnesota, Clinical and Research Consultant, COPD Foundation.

CONFLICT OF INTEREST
Dr. Yawn discloses that she has served on advisory boards for GlaxoSmithKline, AstraZeneca, Novartis and Boehringer Ingelheim. She is a consultant for GlaxoSmithKline on epidemiology studies of COPD and herpes zoster and has an investigator initiated grant to study patient and clinician awareness of risk of HZ in people with COPD.

ACKNOWLEDGMENT
Editorial support was provided by Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, at the Primary Care Education Consortium (PCEC).

SPONSORSHIP
This activity is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium and the Primary Care Respiratory Group and supported by funding from AstraZeneca Pharmaceuticals LP.

PCRG-US
Primary Care Respiratory Group

FIGURE 1. **COPD assessment in primary care to identify undiagnosed respiratory disease and exacerbation risk questionnaire**[21]

For each question, place an X in the box with the answer that is best for you. There are no right or wrong answers, only answers which are right for you.

Please answer each question	No		Yes
1. Have you ever lived or worked in a place with dirty or polluted air, smoke, second-hand smoke, or dust?	☐		☐
2. Does your breathing change with seasons, weather, or air quality?	☐		☐
3. Does your breathing make it difficult to do things such as carry heavy loads, shovel dirt or snow, jog, play tennis, or swim?	☐		☐
4. Compared to others your age, do you tire easily?	☐		☐
	0	1	2 or more
5. In the past 12 months, how many times did you miss work, school, or other activities, due to a cold, bronchitis, or pneumonia?	☐	☐	☐

For questions 1-4, no = 0; yes = 1. Maximum total = 6.

Abbreviation: COPD, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.

SCREENING/CASE FINDING

A key objective identified by GOLD is early detection of COPD.[11] One approach is to identify persons at increased risk of COPD before signs and symptoms of the disease develop. This approach has been systematically investigated by the United States Preventive Services Task Force, which found a lack of evidence of benefit for screening on quality of life, morbidity, or mortality in asymptomatic patients.[12,13]

Another approach for the early detection of COPD is to identify patients with symptoms and signs of COPD that the patient and family physician have not recognized.[14] GOLD advocates case finding in this population.[11] Patients who fit into this population include smokers in their 30s who don't have asthma, but have had a lower respiratory tract infection treated with antibiotics or oral corticosteroids. Some patients with COPD attribute the slow decline in lung function and compensatory activity limitation as consequences of aging, obesity, poor conditioning, or smoker's cough.[15] Such changes often become their new normal. Family physicians might not ask patients about chronic respiratory symptoms or fail to note the importance of recurrent respiratory events.[15,16] The use of validated tools to identify chronic or recurrent respiratory symptoms in the primary care setting has demonstrated up to a 4-fold increase in COPD diagnoses, indicating under recognition of patients with symptomatic COPD.[17-20]

The COPD Assessment in Primary Care to Identify Undiagnosed Respiratory Disease and Exacerbation Risk (CAPTURE) questionnaire was developed to identify patients with undiagnosed, yet symptomatic COPD who would benefit from treatment with available therapies if the COPD diagnosis is confirmed.[21] The 5-item self-administered questionnaire asks patients about symptoms, impact, and acute respiratory illness (**FIGURE 1**).[21] Patients with a CAPTURE score of 0 or 1 are not considered at risk of an exacerbation or to have moderate-to-severe airflow obstruction (ie, forced expiratory volume over 1 second [FEV_1] <60% of predicted); therefore, further evaluation is not warranted. Patients with a CAPTURE score of 5 or 6 are considered to have a high likelihood of symptomatic respiratory disease and/or exacerbation risk and should undergo further evaluation, including spirometry. Patients with a CAPTURE score of 2, 3, or 4 should undergo peak expiratory flow testing. It is important to note that the CAPTURE questionnaire is not intended to identify patients with mild COPD (ie, FEV_1 >60% predicted and no exacerbation in the prior 12 months).

DIAGNOSIS

The most characteristic symptom of COPD is chronic, progressive dyspnea, while cough with sputum production is found in <30% of patients. These symptoms might vary from day to day and could occur before development of airflow limitation by many years. Chronic respiratory symptoms or an acute exacerbation are the common reasons patients seek medical care. The presence of one or more of these respiratory symptoms should prompt further evaluation to identify the underlying cause(s). Disorders to be considered in the differential diagnosis include asthma, heart failure, and bronchiectasis. Differentiating asthma from COPD

TABLE 1. **Differentiating COPD vs asthma**

Feature	COPD	Asthma
History of tobacco smoking or exposure to other types of smoke	Most	Possibly
Symptoms first occur before age 35	Rare	Often
Family history	Uncommon	Common
History of atopic disease	Uncommon	Common
Chronic productive sputum	Common	Uncommon
Breathlessness	Persistent, progressive	Variable
Nighttime awakening with breathlessness and/or wheeze	Uncommon	Common
Significant diurnal or day-to-day variability of symptoms	Uncommon	Common
Lung function between symptoms	Abnormal	Normal/near normal

Abbreviation: COPD, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.

often is challenging (**TABLE 1**)[11,22]; COPD and asthma often are comorbid.[23]

The history and spirometry form the basis of the COPD diagnosis.[11] Key aspects of the history include exposure to risk factors (tobacco and other smoke, occupational dusts, vapors, fumes, gases, biomass fuels, and chemicals), personal history (eg, childhood respiratory infections, low birthweight, genetic factors, congenital/developmental abnormalities), family history of chronic respiratory disease, pattern of symptom development, history of acute respiratory events, comorbidities, and impact on activities of daily living and quality of life. It is important to consider that one-quarter of patients who develop COPD do not have a smoking history. Spirometry is essential for the diagnosis because it is more specific for COPD than peak expiratory flow measurement.[11] Patients with COPD typically show a decrease in both FEV_1 and forced vital capacity (FVC).[11] A post-bronchodilator FEV_1/FVC ratio <0.70 confirms the presence of airflow limitation.[11]

To assess for the presence of symptoms, the COPD Assessment Test (CAT) is preferred over the Modified British Medical Research Council (mMRC) Questionnaire[11] because CAT assesses symptoms beyond breathlessness, such as chest tightness, sleeping soundly, and confidence to leave home.[24] A CAT score ≥10 (maximum 40) indicates the need to consider symptomatic treatment.[11,25] A limitation of CAT is that it does not categorize patients into symptom severity groups for treatment purposes.

The CAT score has been combined with the FEV_1 and history of moderate or severe exacerbations to form the ABCD assessment tool which is used for the diagnosis, prognosis, and development of an individualized treatment plan. The refined ABCD assessment tool includes a number and letter (**FIGURE 2**).[11] The number relates to the GOLD grade of severity of airflow limitation, which is based on the FEV_1, while the letter relates to the symptom burden, which is based on the CAT (or mMRC) score and history of exacerbations. The refined ABCD tool facilitates greater treatment individualization based on parameters that are driving the patient's symptoms at any given time.

PREVENTING FUTURE ACUTE EVENTS

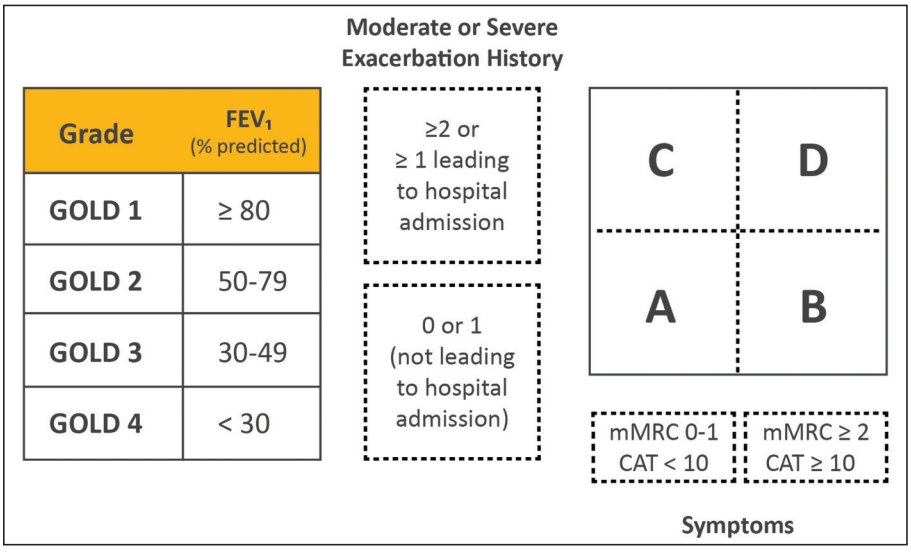
A key shift in treatment in recent years has been away from focusing on acute treatment of exacerbations to an emphasis on chronic treatment to maintain stable disease and prevent exacerbations and other events, such as hospitalization and death. This approach is analogous to the treat-to-target approach used for patients with type 2 diabetes mellitus.

In addition to eliminating or minimizing risk factors, this shift to preventive treatment requires early initiation of individualized, comprehensive therapy consisting of nonpharmacologic therapy, often including pulmonary rehabilitation, as well as combination pharmacologic therapy, with treatment escalation as needed based on symptoms and history of exacerbations. The importance of pulmonary rehabilitation should not be overlooked because of its benefits in improving symptoms, quality of life, and physical and emotional participation in everyday activities.[11] Holistic management directed at comorbidities and risk factors, as well as psychosocial support, is essential. As a chronic, debilitating, often fatal disease, it is important to provide team-based care that nurtures hope and supports patients to acquire knowledge, skills, and attitudes needed to self-manage their COPD.

INITIAL PHARMACOLOGIC TREATMENT

The choice of initial pharmacologic therapy in a patient with stable COPD is based on which 1 of the 4 ABCD groups the patient fits as determined by symptoms and exacerbation risk (**FIGURE 3**).[11] The choice within each class of medication depends on availability and the patient's responses and preferences. Patients in group A can be offered a short- or long-acting bronchodilator to reduce breathlessness, while patients in group B are best treated with a long-acting bron-

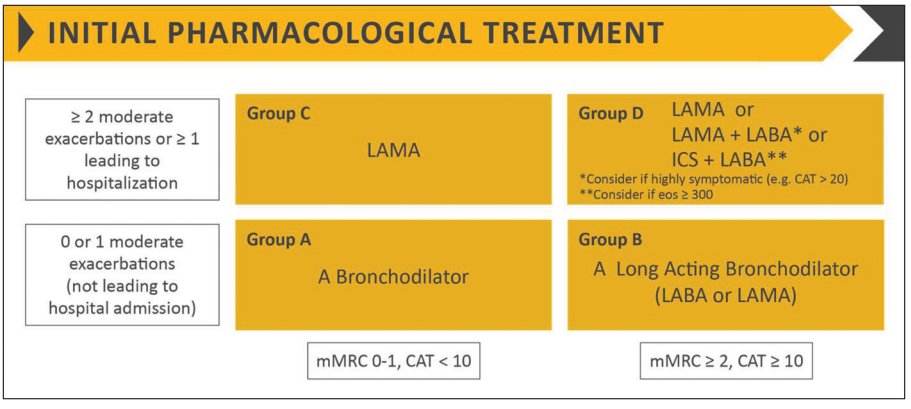
FIGURE 2. **GOLD refined ABCD assessment tool**[11]



Example: Consider 2 patients – both patients with FEV_1 <30% of predicted, CAT scores of 18 and one with no exacerbations in the past year and the other with 3 moderate exacerbations in the past year. Both would have been labeled GOLD D in the prior classification scheme. However, with the new proposed scheme, the patient with 3 moderate exacerbations in the past year would be labeled GOLD grade 4, group D.

Abbreviations: CAT, COPD Assessment Test; FEV_1, forced expiratory volume in 1 second; mMRC, modified Medical Research Council dyspnea questionnaire.

FIGURE 3. **Initial pharmacological treatment**[11]



Abbreviations: CAT, COPD Assessment Test; COPD, chronic obstructive lung disease; eos, eosinophils; ICS, inhaled corticosteroid; LABA, long-acting beta agonist; LAMA, long-acting muscarinic antagonist; mMRC, modified Medical Research Council dyspnea questionnaire.

chodilator, or, in the case of severe breathlessness, 2 bronchodilators. Treating patients in group C should consist of a single long-acting bronchodilator, preferably a long-acting muscarinic antagonist (LAMA).

A LAMA generally is appropriate as initial therapy for patients in group D. However, for patients with more severe symptoms such as those with a CAT score ≥20, the combination of a LAMA plus a long-acting $beta_2$ agonist (LABA) is recommended. In patients with a history of asthma or blood eosinophil count ≥300 cells/μL, initial therapy with a LABA plus inhaled corticosteroid (ICS) is recommended. If breathlessness or exercise limitations persists or the patient develops exacerbations, escalation to inhaled triple therapy (ICS + LABA + LAMA) is recommended.[11]

Inhaled medications

Localization of the COPD disease processes within the respiratory system lends itself to orally inhaled medication administration. Numerous orally inhaled medications for COPD are available, including nebulizers, pressurized metered-dose inhalers with/without spacers, soft-mist inhalers, breath-actuated metered-dose inhalers, and single- and multi-dose dry powder inhalers. Selection of an inhaler should be based on availability and storage requirements, as well as efficacy and safety.[11,26] Patient factors include affordability, preference, and ability and understanding about proper use.[11,26,27] For patients who require ≥2 inhaled controller medications, consider the same type of device for all inhaled medications prescribed for the patient.[28] Ideally, all inhaled controller medications should be available as dual or triple therapy in a single device. Advantages of combination inhalers is improved adherence and lower medication cost.[29]

Two recent systematic reviews and meta-analyses assessed the safety and efficacy of single inhaler triple therapy with other inhaled medications for COPD, as well as separate inhalers of the 3 medications. The single inhaler triple therapies included ICS + LAMA + LABA. Two products are approved by the US Food and Drug Administration: fluticasone furoate/umeclidinium/vilanterol and budesonide/glyco-

TABLE 2. **Checklist for the COPD follow-up office visit**

• Repeat the CAT
○ Have patient complete in the waiting room or examination room[a]
• Ask about:
○ Respiratory problems or events since last visit, particularly if they required an urgent care/emergency department visit
○ Changes in comorbidities
○ Changes in activity level (be specific)
○ Difficulties with prescription refills
○ Difficulties following the treatment plan
○ Satisfaction with treatment
• Observe inhaler technique
○ Can be done by trained staff
• Review medications the patient is taking to be sure they are the ones prescribed
○ Requires patient to bring in actual medications instead of a list
○ Brand might have been changed by pharmacist because of insurance
• Review patient's goals and action plan[a]

Abbreviations: CAT, COPD Assessment Test; COPD, chronic obstructive pulmonary disease.

[a]Can be facilitated by using the COPD Foundation application (https://www.copdfoundation.org/Learn-More/The-COPD-Pocket-Consultant-Guide/Healthcare-Provider-Track.aspx?gclid=CjwKCAjwnIr1BRAWEiwA6GpwNZxd9C7jZuLRF55ltEdWb-gVSLyVEc_YaNAi8puwJ_8nymlXeBVrlhoC31wQAvD_BwE)

pyrronium bromide/formoterol fumarate. A third product, beclomethasone dipropionate/glycopyrronium bromide/formoterol fumarate, is investigational. The recent approval of budesonide/glycopyrronium bromide/formoterol fumarate is based on the results of the phase 3 ETHOS trial. The ETHOS trial showed that at both the standard budesonide dose of 320 mcg and half-dose of 160 mcg demonstrated significant reductions in exacerbations compared with single inhaler dual therapy of glycopyrronium/formoterol fumarate and budesonide/formoterol fumarate, respectively, in patients with moderate to very severe COPD.[30] At the standard budesonide dose, the observed reductions in rate of moderate and severe exacerbations were 24% and 13% with the single inhaler triple therapy vs the single inhaler dual therapies, respectively. In addition, the single inhaler triple therapy showed a 46% reduction in the risk of all-cause mortality compared with glycopyrronium/formoterol fumarate.

The meta-analyses showed that the rate ratios for moderate-to-severe exacerbations with a single inhaler triple therapy were 0.69 (95% confidence interval [CI], 0.55 to 0.87) and 0.80 (95% CI, 0.71 to 0.90) vs LABA + LAMA and ICS + LABA dual therapy, respectively. Improvements in lung function and quality of life were greater with single inhaler triple therapy compared with single inhaler dual therapy (LABA + LAMA or ICS + LABA).[31,32] Meta-analyses found no significant differences in several clinical endpoints, including exacerbations or FEV_1, between single inhaler triple therapy and triple therapy using 3 separate inhalers. In both analyses, the risk of pneumonia was significantly higher with single triple inhaler therapy compared with LABA + LAMA (relative risk 1.38; 95% CI, 1.14 to 1.67[31] and 1.53; 95% CI, 1.25 to 1.87[32]) but not ICS + LABA dual therapy.

Individualizing inhaler selection and teaching and reinforcing proper administration technique have a direct impact on patient adherence and health outcomes.[33] Unfortunately, adherence often is poor and administration errors are common with inhaled medications; clinicians might not be familiar with proper administration technique.[26,34-37] Moreover, clinicians do not routinely assess a patient's ability to use their prescribed inhaler.[38] Common errors in the use of an inhaler device relate to difficulties with inspiratory flow, inhalation duration, coordination, dose preparation, exhalation maneuver before inhalation, and breath-holding following dose inhalation.[39] In patients with a low peak inspiratory flow, for example, which is common after a severe exacerbation, it might be best to avoid using a higher resistance inhaler. When used properly, there appear to be no clinically important differences among the devices, including hand-held devices vs nebulized therapy.[11,40]

FOLLOW-UP VISITS

The shift to preventing exacerbations and other acute events as a primary treatment goal makes frequent follow-up visits critical so that the treatment plan can be adjusted as needed based on patient symptoms, as well as difficulties he or she might be experiencing (**TABLE 2**).[11] The written treatment plan, which is indispensable to promote effective patient self-management,[41,42] should be updated to reflect any changes.

REFERENCES

1. Sullivan J, Pravosud V, Mannino DM, Siegel K, Choate R, Sullivan T. National and state estimates of COPD morbidity and mortality - United States, 2014-2015. *Chronic Obstr Pulm Dis.* 2018;5(4):324-333.
2. Biener AI, Decker SL, Rohde F. Prevalence and treatment of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD) in the United States. *JAMA*. 2019;322(7):602.
3. National Center for Health Statistics. *Health, United States 2018*. 2018. National Center for Health Statistics: Hyattsville, MD; 2019. https://www.cdc.gov/nchs/data/hus/hus18.pdf. Accessed May 6, 2020.
4. National Vital Statistics System. Age-standardized death rates for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)- United States, 1999-2014. National Vital Statistics System: Hyattsville, MD; 2020. https://www.cdc.gov/copd/pdfs/copd_mortality_trend_1999_2014.pdf. Accessed April 21, 2020.
5. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. COPD costs. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention: Atlanta, GA; 2020. https://www.cdc.gov/copd/pubs/COPD-2014-Cost-Infographic-h.pdf. Accessed April 21, 2020.
6. Johansson H, Bertero C, Berg K, Jonasson LL. To live a life with COPD - the consequences of symptom burden. *Int J Chron Obstruct Pulmon Dis.* 2019;14:905-909.
7. Miravitlles M, Ribera A. Understanding the impact of symptoms on the burden of COPD. *Respir Res.* 2017;18(1):67.
8. Mokdad AH, Ballestros K, Echko M, et al. The state of US health, 1990-2016: Burden of diseases, injuries, and risk factors among US states. *JAMA*. 2018;319(14):1444-1472.
9. Schroedl CJ, Yount SE, Szmuilowicz E, Hutchison PJ, Rosenberg SR, Kalhan R. A qualitative study of unmet healthcare needs in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. A potential role for specialist palliative care? *Ann Am Thorac Soc.* 2014;11(9):1433-1438.
10. Press VG, Au DH, Bourbeau J, et al. Reducing chronic obstructive pulmonary disease hospital readmissions. An official American Thoracic Society workshop report. *Ann Am Thorac Soc.* 2019;16(2):161-170.
11. Global Initiative for Chronic Obstructive Lung Disease Inc. Global Strategy for the Diagnosis, Management, and Prevention of Chronic Obstructive Pulmonary Disease- 2020 Report. 2020. https://goldcopd.org/wp-content/uploads/2019/12/GOLD-2020-FINAL-ver1.2-03Dec19_WMV.pdf. Accessed March 12, 2020.
12. Siu AL, Bibbins-Domingo K, Grossman DC, et al. Screening for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: US Preventive Services Task Force Recommendation Statement. *JAMA*. 2016;315(13):1372-1377.
13. Guirguis-Blake JM, Senger CA, Webber EM, Mularski RA, Whitlock EP. Screening for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: Evidence report and systematic review for the US Preventive Services Task Force. *JAMA*. 2016;315(13):1378-1393.
14. Martinez CH, Mannino DM, Jaimes FA, et al. Undiagnosed obstructive lung disease in the United States. Associated factors and long-term mortality. *Ann Am Thorac Soc.* 2015;12(12):1788-1795.
15. Yawn BP, Martinez FJ. POINT: can screening for COPD improve outcomes? Yes. *Chest.* 2020;157(1):7-9.
16. Johnson KM, Khakban A, Bryan S, Sin DD, Sadatsafavi M. Healthcare system encounters before COPD diagnosis: a registry-based longitudinal cohort study. *Thorax.* 2020;75(2):108-115.
17. Jordan RE, Adab P, Sitch A, et al. Targeted case finding for chronic obstructive pulmonary disease versus routine practice in primary care (TargetCOPD): a cluster-randomised controlled trial. *Lancet Respir Med.* 2016;4(9):720-730.
18. Haroon S, Adab P, Riley RD, Fitzmaurice D, Jordan RE. Predicting risk of undiagnosed COPD: development and validation of the TargetCOPD score. *Eur Respir J.* 2017;49(6):1602191.
19. Ruparel M, Quaife SL, Dickson JL, et al. Prevalence, symptom burden and under-diagnosis of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease in a lung cancer screening cohort. *Ann Am Thorac Soc.* 2020;doi:10.1513/AnnalsATS.201911-857OC.
20. Preteroti M, Whitmore GA, Vandemheen KL, et al. Population-based case-finding to identify subjects with undiagnosed asthma or COPD. *Eur Respir J.* 2020;doi:10.1183/13993003.00024-2020.
21. Martinez FJ, Mannino D, Leidy NK, et al. A new approach for identifying patients with undiagnosed chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* 2017;195(6):748-756.
22. American Academy of Family Physicians. COPD and asthma: Differential diagnosis. 2016. https://www.aafp.org/dam/AAFP/documents/journals/fpm/COPD-Asthma.pdf. Accessed April 23, 2020.
23. Krishnan JA, Nibber A, Chisholm A, et al. Prevalence and characteristics of asthma-chronic obstructive pulmonary disease overlap in routine primary care practices. *Ann Am Thorac Soc.* 2019;16(9):1143-1150.
24. Jones PW, Harding G, Berry P, Wiklund I, Chen WH, Kline Leidy N. Development and first validation of the COPD Assessment Test. *Eur Respir J.* 2009;34(3):648-654.
25. Jones PW, Tabberer M, Chen WH. Creating scenarios of the impact of COPD and their relationship to COPD Assessment Test (CAT) scores. *BMC Pulm Med.* 2011;11:42.
26. Lavorini F, Janson C, Braido F, Stratelis G, Lokke A. What to consider before prescribing inhaled medications: a pragmatic approach for evaluating the current inhaler landscape. *Ther Adv Respir Dis.* 2019;13:1753466619884532.
27. Barbara S, Kritikos V, Bosnic-Anticevich S. Inhaler technique: does age matter? A systematic review. *Eur Respir Rev.* 2017;26(146):170055.
28. Bosnic-Anticevich S, Chrystyn H, Costello RW, et al. The use of multiple respiratory inhalers requiring different inhalation techniques has an adverse effect on COPD outcomes. *Int J Chron Obstruct Pulmon Dis.* 2017;12:59-71.
29. Bogart M, Stanford RH, Laliberte F, Germain G, Wu JW, Duh MS. Medication adherence and persistence in chronic obstructive pulmonary disease patients receiving triple therapy in a USA commercially insured population. *Int J Chron Obstruct Pulmon Dis.* 2019;14:343-352.
30. Rabe KF, Martinez FJ, Ferguson GT, et al for the ETHOS Investigators. Triple inhaled therapy at two glucocorticoid doses in moderate-to-very-severe COPD. *N Engl J Med.* 2020;383(1):35-48.
31. Lai CC, Chen CH, Lin CYH, Wang CY, Wang YH. The effects of single inhaler triple therapy vs single inhaler dual therapy or separate triple therapy for the management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: a systematic review and meta-analysis of randomized controlled trials. *Int J Chron Obstruct Pulmon Dis.* 2019;14:1539-1548.
32. Zheng Y, Zhu J, Liu Y, et al. Triple therapy in the management of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: systematic review and meta-analysis. *BMJ.* 2018;363:k4388.
33. Maricoto T, Monteiro L, Gama JMR, Correia-de-Sousa J, Taborda-Barata L. Inhaler technique education and exacerbation risk in older adults with asthma or chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: A meta-analysis. *J Am Geriatr Soc.* 2019;67(1):57-66.
34. Cho-Reyes S, Celli BR, Dembek C, Yeh K, Navaie M. Inhalation technique errors with metered-dose inhalers among patients with obstructive lung diseases: a systematic review and meta-analysis of U.S. studies. *Chronic Obstr Pulm Dis.* 2019;6(3):267-280.
35. Navaie M, Dembek C, Cho-Reyes S, Yeh K, Celli BR. Device use errors with soft mist inhalers: a global systematic literature review and meta-analysis. *Chron Respir Dis.* 2020;17:1479973119901234.
36. Plaza V, Giner J, Curto E, et al. Determinants and differences in satisfaction with the inhaler among patients with asthma or COPD. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract.* 2020;8(2):645-653.
37. Plaza V, Giner J, Rodrigo GJ, Dolovich MB, Sanchis J. Errors in the use of inhalers by health care professionals: a systematic review. *J Allergy Clin Immunol Pract.* 2018;6(3):987-995.
38. Hanania NA, Braman S, Adams SG, et al. The role of inhalation delivery devices in COPD: Perspectives of patients and health care providers. *Chronic Obstr Pulm Dis.* 2018;5(2):111-123.
39. Sulaiman I, Cushen B, Greene G, et al. Objective assessment of adherence to inhalers by patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Am J Respir Crit Care Med.* 2017;195(10):1333-1343.
40. Ninane V, Vandevoorde J, Cataldo D, et al. New developments in inhaler devices within pharmaceutical companies: A systematic review of the impact on clinical outcomes and patient preferences. *Respir Med.* 2015;109(11):1430-1438.
41. Lenferink A, Brusse-Keizer M, van der Valk PD, et al. Self-management interventions including action plans for exacerbations versus usual care in patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2017;8:CD011682.
42. Zwerink M, Brusse-Keizer M, van der Valk PD, et al. Self management for patients with chronic obstructive pulmonary disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2014(3):CD002990.

Stemming the Progression of Diabetic Kidney Disease: The Role of the Primary Care Clinician

George Bakris, MD

CONTINUING MEDICAL EDUCATION

LEARNING OBJECTIVES

At the end of the activity, participants will be able to:

- Identify the risks of kidney disease and their consequences in patients with T2DM.
- Initiate evidence-based therapy to slow the progression of kidney disease in patients with T2DM and CKD.
- Become familiar with the mineralocorticoid receptor antagonist and endothelin receptor antagonist under late-phase investigation.

TARGET AUDIENCE

Family physicians and clinicians who wish to gain increased knowledge and greater competency regarding primary care management of diabetes mellitus and kidney disease.

DISCLOSURES

As a continuing medical education provider accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME), Primary Care Education Consortium (PCEC) requires any individual in a position to influence educational content to disclose any financial interest or other personal relationship with any commercial interest. This includes any entity producing, marketing, re-selling or distributing health care goods or services consumed by, or used on, patients. Mechanisms are in place to identify and resolve any potential conflict of interest prior to the start of the activity. In addition, any discussion of off-label, experimental, or investigational use of drugs or devices will be disclosed by the faculty.

Dr. Bakris discloses that he is a principal investigator for Bayer's FIDELIO diabetic nephropathy outcome trial, a steering committee member for the Novo Nordisk FLOW trial, and on the CALM-2 steering committee for Vascular Dynamic.

Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, editorial support, discloses he has no real or apparent conflicts of interests to report. Additional PCEC staff report no conflicts of interest.

SPONSORSHIP

This activity is sponsored by Primary Care Education Consortium, in collaboration with the Primary Care Metabolic Group.

ACCREDITATION

The Primary Care Education Consortium is accredited by the Accreditation Council for Continuing Medical Education (ACCME) to provide continuing medical education for physicians.

CREDIT DESIGNATION

AMA PRA Category 1 – Primary Care Education Consortium designates this enduring material for a maximum of 1.0 AMA PRA Category 1 credit(s)™. Physicians should claim only the credit commensurate with the extent of their participation in the activity.

CME is available September 1, 2020 to August 31, 2021.

METHOD OF PARTICIPATION

PHYSICIANS: To receive CME credit, please read the journal article and, on completion, go to www.pceconsortium.org/DKD2 to complete the online post-test and receive your certificate of completion.

PHYSICIAN ASSISTANTS AND NURSE PRACTITIONERS: AANP, ANCC, and AAPA accept certificates of participation of educational activities certified for AMA PRA Category 1 Credit™ from organizations accredited by ACCME.

SUPPORTER

This article supported by an educational grant from Bayer HealthCare Pharmaceuticals Inc.

FACULTY

George Bakris, MD, Professor of Medicine, Director, AHA Comprehensive Hypertension Center, The University of Chicago Medicine, Chicago, IL.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Editorial support was provided by Gregory Scott, PharmD, RPh, at the Primary Care Education Consortium (PCEC).

DEFINITION

Chronic kidney disease (CKD) is defined as ≥1 abnormalities of kidney structure or function that have been present for >3 months and have health implications.[1] Markers of kidney damage include albuminuria (urine albumin excretion rate ≥30 mg/24 hours or urine albumin-to-creatinine ratio [UACR] ≥30 mg/g), urine sediment abnormalities, electrolyte and other abnormalities caused by tubular disorders, abnormalities detected by histology, structural abnormalities detected by imaging, or history of kidney transplantation. Decreased kidney function is indicated by an estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR) <60 mL/min/1.73 m^2.

EPIDEMIOLOGY

CKD is a common disease that affects 37 million U.S. adults, more than 1 in 7, with the highest prevalence among those age 20 to 54.[2] Nearly one-half (48%) of individuals with severely reduced kidney function, but not on dialysis, are not aware of having CKD.[2] CKD is especially common among persons with diabetes or hypertension, their combination representing approximately 3 out of 4 new cases of CKD.[3] Other risk factors for CKD include heart disease, obesity, family history of CKD, certain ethnicities (ie, African Americans, Hispanic Americans, Asians, Pacific Islanders, and Native Americans), older age, low birth weight, smoking, and acute kidney injury, as well as exposure to heavy metals and excessive alcohol use, recreational drugs, or analgesic medications.[2,4]

There is a bi-directional relationship between CKD and cardiovascular disease because CKD is an independent risk factor for coronary heart disease, heart failure, and stroke. CKD also increases the risk of pulmonary failure, anemia, immune failure, metabolic bone disease, anorexia, and edema.[2] Cognition also is affected as CKD progresses, independent of age-related changes, affecting both lower-order and higher-order cognitive abilities.[5]

The natural history of CKD in persons with diabetic kidney disease (DKD) progresses from glomerular hyperfiltration to rising albuminuria, declining eGFR, and finally end-stage kidney disease.[6-8] It is important to recognize that albuminuria can precede a decline in the eGFR by more than a decade.[6,9] Analysis of data from the ACCORD trial showed that among persons with type 2 diabetes mellitus (T2DM), those with non-albuminuric CKD showed a slower rate of decline in eGFR than those with albuminuric non-CKD or albuminuric CKD.[10] Further data supporting the importance of recognizing and managing albuminuria is the finding that higher UACR is associated with a greater risk of cardiovascular death, independent of eGFR.[1]

CARDIOVASCULAR OUTCOME TRIALS

The contribution of hyperglycemia to kidney disease and the microvascular benefits of reducing blood glucose are the basis of the goal for achieving glycemic control in persons with T2DM. There was, however, little evidence demonstrating cardiovascular benefit with glucose-lowering medication. In fact, a 2007 systematic review and meta-analysis showed a significantly increased risk of myocardial infarction and suggested a higher risk of cardiovascular death in patients with T2DM treated with rosiglitazone.[11] Although the finding related to cardiovascular death subsequently was proven inaccurate,[12,13] the FDA issued guidance in 2008 requiring pharmaceutical manufacturers to evaluate the cardiovascular risk of new glucose-lowering medications for T2DM in a cardiovascular outcome trial (CVOT).[14]

Since 2008, more than 20 CVOTs have demonstrated that the cardiovascular safety of each of the dipeptidyl peptidase-4 inhibitors (DPP-4i), glucagon-like peptide-1 receptor agonists (GLP-1RA), and sodium glucose cotransporter-2 inhibitors (SGLT-2i) investigated is non-inferior to placebo as part of standard therapy. Moreover, linagliptin,[15] saxagliptin,[16] dulaglutide,[17] liraglutide,[18] semaglutide (injectable),[19] canagliflozin,[20] dapagliflozin,[21,22] and empagliflozin[23] have been shown to significantly reduce the occurrence of one or more kidney endpoints compared with placebo. Endpoints included change in UACR, serum creatinine, and/or eGFR, as well as time to dialysis and renal death. Among these medications shown to reduce kidney endpoints, only linagliptin and canagliflozin have been investigated in a clinical trial specifically powered to assess kidney outcomes in high-risk patients with T2DM.

The CARMELINA trial included adults with T2DM, a history of vascular disease, UACR >200 mg/g, and reduced eGFR and micro- or macroalbuminuria; patients with end-stage kidney disease (ESKD) were excluded.[15] Participants were randomized to linagliptin, 5 mg/d, or placebo in addition to standard care. After a median follow up of 2.2 years, the renal-specific composite outcome (time to first occurrence of adjudicated death because of renal failure, ESKD, or sustained ≥40% decrease in eGFR) did not differ between the linagliptin and placebo groups (9.4% and 8.8%, respectively; $P = .62$).

In the CREDENCE trial, participants were treated with renin-angiotensin-aldosterone inhibitor therapy at baseline and had a mean eGFR of 56 mL/min/1.73 m^2 and UACR of 927 mg/g.[24] This trial showed that canagliflozin significantly reduced a renal-specific composite outcome (ESKD, doubling of serum creatinine, or renal death) over the median follow up of 2.62 years in patients with an eGFR as low as 30 mL/min/1.73 m^2. In addition, the risk of ESKD was 32% lower in the canagliflozin group compared with placebo (hazard ratio: 0.68; 95% confidence interval 0.54 to 0.86; $P < .001$).

Recently, the DAPA-CKD trial was stopped early after a routine assessment of efficacy and safety showed earlier than anticipated benefits with dapagliflozin for the primary endpoint of a composite of renal function or death in patients with CKD regardless of the presence of T2DM.[25,26]

The 1 DPP-4i, 3 GLP-1RA, and 3 SGLT-2i medications with a demonstrated kidney benefit—with preference given to the SGLT-2is—are recommended by the American Diabetes Association for patients with T2DM and established CKD who do not achieve adequate glycemic control with lifestyle management combined with metformin.[27] Although this rec-

ommendation is for secondary prevention, that is, in patients with established CKD, evolving evidence suggests there might be a role for these medications for primary prevention, meaning patients who do not have established CKD.[28,29]

The kidney benefits of selected glucose-lowering medications and their rapidly evolving role in treating patients with T2DM and CKD is a reminder of the importance of identifying patients with DKD and early use of comprehensive evidence-based treatment that includes SGLT-2is as recommended.

CASE SCENARIO

Louise, age 69, was diagnosed with T2DM 4 years ago. Her glycated hemoglobin (A1c) was 8.8% at diagnosis. Her A1c has remained above her target of <7%, rising to 7.8% over the past 9 months. Louise complains of puffiness in her hands and feet.

Vital signs: within normal limits

Labs: eGFR 56 mL/min/1.73 m^2 (60 mL/min/1.73 m^2 17 months ago); UACR 35 mg/g

Current medications: metformin, DPP-4i, atorvastatin, ramipril, and low-dose aspirin

How would you modify her therapy?

RISK FACTOR MANAGEMENT

Goals of therapy

Evaluation of the management plan requires reviewing the treatment goals. In the case of patients with DKD, the overarching goal is to reduce the risks of kidney disease progression and cardiovascular disease.[30] To achieve this, comprehensive treatment is needed to address/include the following[9,30]:

- Glycemic control
- Blood pressure control
- Renin-angiotensin-aldosterone system (RAAS) blockade
- Lipid management
- Lifestyle/physical activity
- Smoking cessation
- Nutrition
- Aspirin (low-dose)

Glycemic control

The American Diabetes Association recommends an A1c <8% for patients with advanced microvascular or macrovascular complications, extensive comorbidities, limited life expectancy, or history of severe hypoglycemia.[31] By comparison, the National Kidney Foundation (NKF) recommends a target A1c of <6.5% to <8% in patients with T2DM and non-dialysis dependent CKD to prevent or delay progression of microvascular complications.[30,32] The NKF recommendation advises that safe achievement of lower A1c targets, such as A1c <6.5% or <7%, could be facilitated by blood glucose self-monitoring or combined continuous glucose monitoring and glucose-lowering medications that are not associated with hypoglycemia.[30] Moreover, the NKF recommends treatment consisting of lifestyle management in combination with metformin and SGLT-2i therapy, with additional drug therapy as needed for glycemic control. The use of both metformin and SGLT-2i therapy is contingent on an eGFR ≥30 mL/min/1.73 m^2.[30] A GLP-1RA shown to offer a cardiovascular benefit may be used as an alternative to metformin or SGLT-2i.

Blood pressure control

Blood pressure is also a key target and should be ≤140/90 mm Hg in patients with DKD and urine albumin excretion <30 mg/24 hours or those with a 10-year atherosclerotic cardiovascular disease (ASCVD) risk <15%.[32,33] [The American College of Cardiology ASCVD Risk Estimator Plus may be found here: http://tools.acc.org/ASCVD-Risk-Estimator-Plus/#!/calculate/estimate/.] Target blood pressure is ≤130/80 mm Hg in patients with DKD and urine albumin excretion ≥30 mg/24 hours or 10-year ASCVD risk >15%.[32,33] RAAS blockade with an angiotensin converting enzyme inhibitor (ACE-I) or angiotensin receptor blocker (ARB) is recommended in patients with albuminuric CKD and hypertension.

Other comorbidities

Other comorbidities, such as obesity,[34] dyslipidemia,[35] smoking,[36] etc., should be treated as recommended by existing guidelines.[9]

RAAS inhibitor therapy

The ACE-I and ARB medication classes have been shown to effectively reduce albuminuria, and even reverse moderately increased albuminuria, thereby avoiding or delaying the progression of CKD to ESKD in patients with DKD.[30] There appears to be no difference between ACE-I and ARB in renal outcomes or side effects.[37] Because the albuminuria-lowering effect, as well as side effects, are dose-related, it is important to optimize ACE-I or ARB therapy by starting at a low dosage and increasing to the highest tolerated recommended dosage.

Blocking aldosterone with a steroid-based mineralocorticoid receptor antagonist (MRA), such as spironolactone or eplerenone, might be beneficial in patients with resistant hypertension who have eGFR >45 mL/min/1.73 m^2 and no history of hyperkalemia.[30] Additive benefits are observed with the addition of a steroid-based MRA to an ACE-I or ARB.[38-40] The use of steroid-based MRA therapy is limited by adverse events, such as hyperkalemia in patients with stage ≥3 CKD.[41,42]

Management of RAAS inhibitor complications with approved therapies, eg, patiromer or sodium zirconium cyclosilicate for chronic hyperkalemia, is recommended by KDIGO rather than decreasing the dose of RAAS inhibitor therapy.[30]

The kidney and medications

In patients with CKD, it is important to be mindful of how medications are cleared so as to appropriately dose those that are primary cleared by the kidneys. These include metformin, many of the DPP-4is, GLP-1RAs, and SGLT-2is, as well as ACE-Is and ARBs, and several statins. The nephrotoxic potential of medications also must be considered because inappropriate use could cause acute kidney injury. Examples include ACE-Is and ARBs, diuretics, and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs. The most up-to-date source for information about use in kidney disease remains the FDA-approved product label.

CASE SCENARIO (CONTINUED)

To address the patient's worsening glycemic control, the addition of a SGLT-2 inhibitor is appropriate. Consideration should also be given to intensifying RAAS inhibitor therapy by increasing the dose of ramipril, if possible, with close monitoring of the serum potassium.

CONSIDERATIONS FOR NEPHROLOGIST REFERRAL

Many patients with kidney disease can be managed successfully in the primary care setting, depending on the provider's comfort. However, patients for whom nephrology referral might be considered include[43]:

- uncertain etiology of kidney disease
- eGFR <30 mL/min/1.73 m^2
- rapidly progressing kidney disease
- difficult management issues, such as anemia, metabolic bone disease, secondary hyperparathyroidism, resistant hypertension, and electrolyte disturbances.

When seeking a nephrology referral, it might be helpful to begin the referral request with: "Per KDIGO guidelines, I am referring this patient because of uncontrolled hypertension, stage 4 CKD, serum creatinine increased 25% in 6 months, (or similar reason)."

MEDICATIONS IN LATE-STAGE INVESTIGATION FOR CKD

Beyond the medications previously discussed, numerous agents are undergoing clinical investigation for CKD and are not yet approved for use in the United States. Three of these are the non-steroidal MRAs esaxerenone and finerenone and the endothelin-1 (ET-1) receptor antagonist atrasentan. Esaxerenone has not entered phase 3 clinical trials in the United States and will not be discussed further.[44]

Finerenone

The importance of aldosterone in causing cardiovascular and kidney injury beyond the effects of renin and angiotensin II increasingly is being recognized.[45] Patients with DKD show increased activity of the mineralocorticoid receptor, which might be driven by increased levels of circulating aldosterone, altered cortisol activity, or increased local expression of the mineralocorticoid receptor itself.[46] Whereas the steroid-based MRAs bind to the ligand domain of the mineralocorticoid receptor, finerenone induces a conformational change within the mineralocorticoid receptor. This change is thought to result in less potassium retention compared with steroid-based MRAs.[37]

ARTS-DN Trial

The safety and efficacy of finerenone were investigated in the Mineralocorticoid Receptor Antagonist Tolerability Study-Diabetic Nephropathy (ARTS-DN) in patients with diabetes and high or very high albuminuria; most received concomitant treatment with an ACE-I or ARB.[47] Patients (N = 823) were randomized to 1 of 7 finerenone dosage levels or placebo for 90 days. Dosage levels of finerenone were 1.25 mg, 2.5 mg, 5 mg, 7.5 mg, 10 mg, 15 mg, and 20 mg/d. At baseline, 37% of patients had very high albuminuria (UACR ≥300 mg/g) and 40% had an eGFR ≤60 mL/min/1.73 m^2. Finerenone demonstrated a dose-dependent reduction in UACR compared with placebo at 90 days, with significant reductions achieved at daily dosages ≥7.5 mg (7.5 mg, 0.79, $P = .004$; 10 mg, 0.76, $P = .001$; 15 mg, 0.67, $P < .001$; 20 mg, 0.62, $P < .001$).

In the ARTS-DN trial, there was no difference in the overall incidence of adverse events and serious adverse events between the finerenone groups and the placebo group. Treatment was discontinued because of an adverse event in 4.3% and 3.2% of finerenone- and placebo-treated patients, respectively. An increase in serum potassium to ≥5.6 mEq/L, leading to treatment discontinuation, occurred in 1.7% and 0% of finerenone- and placebo-treated patients, respectively. The occurrences of a decrease ≥40% in the eGFR at any time post-baseline through 120 days generally were similar in the placebo and finerenone groups.

FIDELIO-DKD and FIGARO-DKD Trials

Finerenone is being evaluated in 2 randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, multicenter, phase 3 clinical tri-

als: Finerenone in Reducing Kidney Failure and Disease Progression in Diabetic Kidney Disease (FIDELIO-DKD)[48] and Finerenone in Reducing CV Mortality and Morbidity in Diabetic Kidney Disease (FIGARO-DKD)[49] trial. Both trials examine adults with T2DM and albuminuria concomitantly treated with an ACE-I or ARB. Patients are randomized to finerenone, 10 or 20 mg/d, or placebo with dosages titrated based on serum potassium level and change in eGFR. The primary endpoints are a composite of time to first occurrence of kidney failure, sustained decrease of eGFR ≥40% for ≥4 weeks, or renal death (FIDELIO-DKD) or time to first occurrence of cardiovascular death, nonfatal myocardial infarction, nonfatal stroke, or heart failure hospitalization (FIGARO-DKD). FIDELIO-DKD was completed in April 2020, with preliminary analysis indicating that a significant benefit in the primary endpoint was achieved with finerenone vs placebo; full results have not been published yet. FIGARO-DKD is expected to be completed in July 2021.

Atrasentan

Atrasentan is an endothelin-1 (ET-1) receptor antagonist. ET-1 exerts potent vasoconstrictive effects on the efferent renal vasculature resulting in reduced renal blood flow and glomerular hyperfiltration.[50,51] In addition, ET-1 is thought to promote kidney injury by activating pro-inflammatory and profibrotic pathways.[52,53] Increased production of ET-1 results from hyperglycemia, insulin resistance, obesity, dyslipidemia, RAAS activation, endothelial dysfunction, and increased oxidative stress.[52] A limitation of blocking endothelin receptors is sodium and water retention.[37]

The safety and efficacy of atrasentan were demonstrated in the RADAR trial, which examined patients with T2DM, albuminuria, and decreased kidney function.[54] After 12 weeks of treatment, atrasentan, 0.75 and 1.25 mg/d, significantly reduced albuminuria vs placebo by 35% and 38%, respectively, with no significant change in eGFR.

SONAR Trial

Based on the results of the RADAR trial, the phase 3 Study of Diabetic Nephropathy with Atrasentan (SONAR) trial was conducted in adults with T2DM, UACR of 300 to 5000 mg/g, eGFR of 25 to 75 mL/min/1.73 m^2, and brain natriuretic peptide ≤200 pg/mL.[55] Patients underwent a run-in phase (N=5630) to optimize ACE-I/ARB and/or diuretic therapy followed by a 6-week enrichment phase (N=5117) to identify those treated with atrasentan, 0.75 mg/d, who had a ≥30% reduction in UACR without substantial fluid retention (responders). Responders (N=2648) and non-responders (N=1020) were separately randomized to atrasentan, 0.75 mg/d, or placebo.

The trial was terminated early after a median follow up of 2.2 years because of a lower-than-planned event rate. Significantly fewer patients in the atrasentan "responder" group experienced the primary endpoint (composite of time to first occurrence of doubling of serum creatinine, onset of ESKD, or kidney death) compared with placebo (6% vs 7.9%; $P = .0047$).[56] Similarly, among "responders" and "non-responders" combined, significantly fewer patients treated with atrasentan experienced the primary endpoint (8.3% vs 10.5%; $P = .0023$). Significant reductions in individual kidney endpoints were observed as well. Significantly more patients treated with atrasentan experienced hypervolemia/fluid retention (36.6% vs 32.3%) or anemia (18.5% vs 10.3%), as well as a serious adverse event (36.3% vs 32.6%). There was no difference between the 2 groups on serious heart failure events (1.7% vs 1.1%). Overall, the results of SONAR showed that patients with T2DM and CKD who initially experience a substantial reduction of UACR without significant sodium and fluid retention achieve a reduction of kidney events.

SUMMARY

Among patients with T2DM, CKD is common, resulting in an increased risk of cardiovascular, lung, bone, and other events. The UACR and eGFR are independent predictors of cardiovascular events. Achieving target glycemic and blood pressure goals is important for reducing the risk and progression of CKD. RAAS inhibitor therapy is well-established for reducing adverse kidney events. Based upon evolving evidence, SGLT-2 inhibitors are recommended to reduce kidney events in patients with T2DM and established CKD. To overcome limitations with currently available MRAs, the non-steroidal MRA finerenone is in late-stage development and has demonstrated significant reductions in key kidney endpoints. Atrasentan, an ET-1 receptor antagonist, provides a new approach to treating CKD and has demonstrated significant reductions in kidney endpoints.

REFERENCES

1. Chapter 1: Definition and classification of CKD. *Kidney Int Suppl (2011).* 2013;3(1):19-62.
2. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Chronic kidney disease basics. Published 2018. https://www.cdc.gov/kidneydisease/basics.html. Accessed August 17, 2018.
3. United States Renal Data System. 2019 USRDS annual report: Epidemiology of kidney disease in the United States. Published 2019. https://www.usrds.org/2019/view/Default.aspx. Accessed January 31, 2020.
4. Kazancioglu R. Risk factors for chronic kidney disease: an update. *Kidney Int Suppl (2011).* 2013;3(4):368-371.
5. Brodski J, Rossell SL, Castle DJ, Tan EJ. A systematic review of cognitive impairments associated with kidney failure in adults before natural age-related changes. *J Int Neuropsychol Soc.* 2019;25(1):101-114.
6. Alicic RZ, Rooney MT, Tuttle KR. Diabetic kidney disease: Challenges, progress, and possibilities. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol.* 2017;12(12):2032-2045.
7. Kendall DM, Cuddihy RM, Bergenstal RM. Clinical application of incretin-based therapy: therapeutic potential, patient selection and clinical use. *Am J Med.* 2009;122(6 Suppl):S37-S50.
8. Afkarian M, Zelnick LR, Hall YN, et al. Clinical manifestations of kidney disease among US adults with diabetes, 1988-2014. *JAMA.* 2016;316(6):602-610.
9. Umanath K, Lewis JB. Update on diabetic nephropathy: core curriculum 2018. *Am J Kidney Dis.* 2018;71(6):884-895.

10. Buyadaa O, Magliano DJ, Salim A, Koye DN, Shaw JE. Risk of rapid kidney function decline, all-cause mortality, and major cardiovascular events in nonalbuminuric chronic kidney disease in type 2 diabetes. *Diabetes Care.* 2020;43(1):122-129.
11. Nissen SE, Wolski K. Effect of rosiglitazone on the risk of myocardial infarction and death from cardiovascular causes. *N Engl J Med.* 2007;356(24):2457-2471.
12. Home PD, Pocock SJ, Beck-Nielsen H, et al. Rosiglitazone evaluated for cardiovascular outcomes in oral agent combination therapy for type 2 diabetes (RECORD): a multicentre, randomised, open-label trial. *Lancet.* 2009;373(9681):2125-2135.
13. Nissen SE, Wolski K. Rosiglitazone revisited: an updated meta-analysis of risk for myocardial infarction and cardiovascular mortality. *Arch Intern Med.* 2010;170(14): 1191-1201.
14. US Food and Drug Administration. Guidance for Industry. Diabetes Mellitus- Evaluating Cardiovascular Risk in New Antidiabetic Therapies to Treat Type 2 Diabetes. Published 2008. https://www.fda.gov/downloads/Drugs/GuidanceComplianceRegulatoryInformation/Guidances/ucm071627.pdf. Accessed February 6, 2018.
15. Rosenstock J, Perkovic V, Johansen OE, et al. Effect of linagliptin vs placebo on major cardiovascular events in adults with type 2 diabetes and high cardiovascular and renal risk: the CARMELINA randomized clinical trial. *JAMA.* 2019;321(1):69-79.
16. Mosenzon O, Leibowitz G, Bhatt DL, et al. Effect of saxagliptin on renal outcomes in the SAVOR-TIMI 53 trial. *Diabetes Care.* 2017;40(1):69-76.
17. Gerstein HC, Colhoun HM, Dagenais GR, et al. Dulaglutide and cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes (REWIND): a double-blind, randomised placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet.* 2019;394(10193):121-130.
18. Marso SP, Daniels GH, Brown-Frandsen K, et al. Liraglutide and cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2016;375(4):311-322.
19. Marso SP, Bain SC, Consoli A, et al. Semaglutide and cardiovascular outcomes in patients with type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2016;375(19):1834-1844.
20. Neal B, Perkovic V, Mahaffey KW, et al. Canagliflozin and cardiovascular and renal events in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2017;377(7):644-657.
21. Wiviott SD, Raz I, Bonaca MP, et al. Dapagliflozin and cardiovascular outcomes in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2019;380(4):347-357.
22. Mosenzon O, Wiviott SD, Cahn A, et al. Effects of dapagliflozin on development and progression of kidney disease in patients with type 2 diabetes: an analysis from the DECLARE-TIMI 58 randomised trial. *Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol.* 2019;7(8): 606-617.
23. Zinman B, Wanner C, Lachin JM, et al. Empagliflozin, cardiovascular outcomes, and mortality in type 2 diabetes. *N Engl J Med.* 2015;373(22):2117-2128.
24. Perkovic V, Jardine MJ, Neal B, et al. Canagliflozin and renal outcomes in type 2 diabetes and nephropathy. *N Engl J Med.* 2019;380(24):2295-2306.
25. Heerspink HJL, Stefansson BV, Chertow GM, et al. Rationale and protocol of the Dapagliflozin And Prevention of Adverse outcomes in Chronic Kidney Disease (DAPA-CKD) randomized controlled trial. *Nephrol Dial Transplant.* 2020;35(2):274-282.
26. AstraZeneca. Farxiga phase III DAPA-CKD trial will be stopped early after overwhelming efficacy in patients with chronic kidney disease. Published March 30, 2020. https://www.astrazeneca.com/media-centre/press-releases/2020/farxiga-phase-iii-dapa-ckd-trial-will-be-stopped-early-after-overwhelming-efficacy-in-patients-with-chronic-kidney-disease.html. Accessed April 2, 2020.
27. American Diabetes Association. 9. Pharmacologic approaches to glycemic treatment: standards of medical care in diabetes-2020. *Diabetes Care.* 2020;43(Suppl 1):S98-S110.
28. Mahaffey KW, Jardine MJ, Bompoint S, et al. Canagliflozin and cardiovascular and renal outcomes in type 2 diabetes mellitus and chronic kidney disease in primary and secondary cardiovascular prevention groups. *Circulation.* 2019;140(9):739-750.
29. Rosenzweig JL, Bakris GL, Berglund LF, et al. Primary prevention of ASCVD and T2DM in patients at metabolic risk: an Endocrine Society* clinical practice guideline. *J Clin Endocrinol Metab.* 2019;doi:10.1210/jc.2019-01338.
30. KDIGO Clinical Practice Guideline on Diabetes Management in Chronic Kidney Disease. Published 2019. https://kdigo.org/wp-content/uploads/2018/03/KDIGO-Diabetes-Management-in-CKD_Public-Review.pdf. Accessed January 31, 2020.
31. American Diabetes Association. 6. Glycemic targets: standards of medical care in diabetes-2020. *Diabetes Care.* 2020;43(Suppl 1):S66-S76.
32. Chapter 3: Management of progression and complications of CKD. *Kidney Int Suppl (2011).* 2013;3(1):73-90.
33. American Diabetes Association. 10. Cardiovascular disease and risk management: standards of medical care in diabetes-2020. *Diabetes Care.* 2020;43(Suppl 1):S111-S134.
34. Jensen MD, Ryan DH, Apovian CM, et al. 2013 AHA/ACC/TOS guideline for the management of overweight and obesity in adults: a report of the American College of Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines and The Obesity Society. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2014;63(25 Pt B):2985-3023.
35. Grundy SM, Stone NJ, Bailey AL, et al. 2018 AHA/ACC/AACVPR/AAPA/ABC/ACPM/ADA/AGS/APhA/ASPC/NLA/PCNA guideline on the management of blood cholesterol. *Circulation.* 2018;139(25):e1082-e1143.
36. Barua RS, Rigotti NA, Benowitz NL, et al. 2018 ACC Expert Consensus Decision Pathway on Tobacco Cessation Treatment: a report of the American College of Cardiology Task Force on Clinical Expert Consensus Documents. *J Am Coll Cardiol.* 2018;72(25):3332-3365.
37. Muskiet MHA, Wheeler DC, Heerspink HJL. New pharmacological strategies for protecting kidney function in type 2 diabetes. *Lancet Diabetes Endocrinol.* 2019;7(5):397-412.
38. Bolignano D, Palmer SC, Navaneethan SD, Strippoli GF. Aldosterone antagonists for preventing the progression of chronic kidney disease. *Cochrane Database Syst Rev.* 2014(4):CD007004.
39. Chrysostomou A, Becker G. Spironolactone in addition to ACE inhibition to reduce proteinuria in patients with chronic renal disease. *N Engl J Med.* 2001;345(12): 925-926.
40. Epstein M, Williams GH, Weinberger M, et al. Selective aldosterone blockade with eplerenone reduces albuminuria in patients with type 2 diabetes. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol.* 2006;1(5):940-951.
41. Lazich I, Bakris GL. Prediction and management of hyperkalemia across the spectrum of chronic kidney disease. *Semin Nephrol.* 2014;34(3):333-339.
42. Bomback AS, Kshirsagar AV, Amamoo MA, Klemmer PJ. Change in proteinuria after adding aldosterone blockers to ACE inhibitors or angiotensin receptor blockers in CKD: a systematic review. *Am J Kidney Dis.* 2008;51(2):199-211.
43. American Diabetes Association. 11. Microvascular complications and foot care: standards of medical care in diabetes-2020. *Diabetes Care.* 2020;43(Suppl 1):S135-S151.
44. Ito S, Shikata K, Nangaku M, Okuda Y, Sawanobori T. Efficacy and safety of esaxerenone (CS-3150) for the treatment of type 2 diabetes with microalbuminuria: A randomized, double-blind, placebo-controlled, phase II trial. *Clin J Am Soc Nephrol.* 2019;14(8):1161-1172.
45. Messaoudi S, Azibani F, Delcayre C, Jaisser F. Aldosterone, mineralocorticoid receptor, and heart failure. *Mol Cell Endocrinol.* 2012;350(2):266-272.
46. Epstein M. Aldosterone as a mediator of progressive renal disease: pathogenetic and clinical implications. *Am J Kidney Dis.* 2001;37(4):677-688.
47. Bakris GL, Agarwal R, Chan JC, et al. Effect of finerenone on albuminuria in patients with diabetic nephropathy: a randomized clinical trial. *JAMA.* 2015;314(9):884-894.
48. Bakris GL, Agarwal R, Anker SD, et al. Design and baseline characteristics of the finerenone in reducing kidney failure and disease progression in diabetic kidney disease trial. *Am J Nephrol.* 2019;50(5):333-344.
49. Ruilope LM, Agarwal R, Anker SD, et al. Design and baseline characteristics of the finerenone in reducing cardiovascular mortality and morbidity in diabetic kidney disease trial. *Am J Nephrol.* 2019;50(5):345-356.
50. Tonneijck L, Muskiet MH, Smits MM, et al. Glomerular hyperfiltration in diabetes: mechanisms, clinical significance, and treatment. *J Am Soc Nephrol.* 2017;28(4):1023-1039.
51. Dolinina J, Rippe A, Oberg CM. Sustained, delayed, and small increments in glomerular permeability to macromolecules during systemic ET-1 infusion mediated via the ETA receptor. *Am J Physiol Renal Physiol.* 2019;316(6):F1173-F1179.
52. Kohan DE, Barton M. Endothelin and endothelin antagonists in chronic kidney disease. *Kidney Int.* 2014;86(5):896-904.
53. Saleh MA, Pollock JS, Pollock DM. Distinct actions of endothelin A-selective versus combined endothelin A/B receptor antagonists in early diabetic kidney disease. *J Pharmacol Exp Ther.* 2011;338(1):263-270.
54. de Zeeuw D, Coll B, Andress D, et al. The endothelin antagonist atrasentan lowers residual albuminuria in patients with type 2 diabetic nephropathy. *J Am Soc Nephrol.* 2014;25(5):1083-1093.
55. Heerspink HJL, Andress DL, Bakris G, et al. Rationale and protocol of the Study Of diabetic Nephropathy with AtRasentan (SONAR) trial: A clinical trial design novel to diabetic nephropathy. *Diabetes Obes Metab.* 2018;20(6):1369-1376.
56. Heerspink HJL, Parving HH, Andress DL, et al; SONAR Committees and Investigators. Atrasentan and renal events in patients with type 2 diabetes and chronic kidney disease (SONAR): a double-blind, randomised, placebo-controlled trial. *Lancet.* 2019;393(10184):1937-1947.